



SELDIN AND GIEBISCH'S

THE KIDNEY

Physiology and Pathophysiology

FIFTH EDITION

Edited by

ROBERT J. ALPERN

MICHAEL J. CAPLAN

ORSON W. MOE

Volume 1





SELDIN AND GIEBISCH'S THE KIDNEY
PHYSIOLOGY AND PATHOPHYSIOLOGY

FIFTH EDITION



ELSEVIER
*science &
technology books*

•• Companion Web Site:

<http://booksite.elsevier.com/9780123814623>

Seldin and Giebisch's The Kidney: Physiology and Pathophysiology, fifth edition

Robert J. Alpern, Orson W. Moe and Michael Caplan, Editors

Resources for Professors:

- All figures from the book available as both Power Point slides and .jpeg files



TOOLS FOR ALL YOUR TEACHING NEEDS
textbooks.elsevier.com



ACADEMIC
PRESS

To adopt this book for course use, visit <http://textbooks.elsevier.com>.



SELDIN AND GIEBISCH'S THE KIDNEY

PHYSIOLOGY AND PATHOPHYSIOLOGY

FIFTH EDITION

VOLUME 1

ROBERT J. ALPERN

*Yale University School of Medicine
New Haven, CT, USA*

ORSON W. MOE

*The University of Texas Southwestern Medical Center at Dallas
Dallas, TX, USA*

MICHAEL CAPLAN

Yale University School of Medicine, New Haven, CT, USA



ELSEVIER

AMSTERDAM • BOSTON • HEIDELBERG • LONDON
NEW YORK • OXFORD • PARIS • SAN DIEGO
SAN FRANCISCO • SINGAPORE • SYDNEY • TOKYO

Academic Press is an imprint of Elsevier



Academic Press is an imprint of Elsevier

32 Jamestown Road, London NW1 7BY, UK
225 Wyman Street, Waltham, MA 02451, USA
525 B Street, Suite 1800, San Diego, CA 92101-4495, USA

Fifth edition 2013

Copyright © 2013 Elsevier Inc. All rights reserved

No part of this publication may be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system or transmitted in any form or by any means electronic, mechanical, photocopying, recording or otherwise without the prior written permission of the publisher

Permissions may be sought directly from Elsevier's Science & Technology Rights Department in Oxford, UK: phone (+44) (0) 1865 843830; fax (+44) (0) 1865 853333; email: permissions@elsevier.com. Alternatively, visit the Science and Technology Books website at www.elsevierdirect.com/rights for further information

Notice

No responsibility is assumed by the publisher for any injury and/or damage to persons or property as a matter of products liability, negligence or otherwise, or from any use or operation of any methods, products, instructions or ideas contained in the material herein. Because of rapid advances in the medical sciences, in particular, independent verification of diagnoses and drug dosages should be made

Medicine is an ever-changing field. Standard safety precautions must be followed, but as new research and clinical experience broaden our knowledge, changes in treatment and drug therapy may become necessary or appropriate. Readers are advised to check the most current product information provided by the manufacturer of each drug to be administered to verify the recommended dose, the method and duration of administrations, and contraindications. It is the responsibility of the treating physician, relying on experience and knowledge of the patient, to determine dosages and the best treatment for each individual patient. Neither the publisher nor the authors assume any liability for any injury and/or damage to persons or property arising from this publication

British Library Cataloguing-in-Publication Data

A catalogue record for this book is available from the British Library

Library of Congress Cataloguing-in-Publication Data

A catalog record for this book is available from the Library of Congress

ISBN : 978-0-12-381462-3 (set)

ISBN : 978-0-12-397207-1 (volume 1)

ISBN : 978-0-12-397208-8 (volume 2)

For information on all Academic Press publications
visit our website at elsevierdirect.com

Typeset by MPS Ltd.
www.adi-mps.com

Printed and bound in United States of America

12 13 14 15 16 10 9 8 7 6 5 4 3 2 1

Working together to grow
libraries in developing countries

www.elsevier.com | www.bookaid.org | www.sabre.org

ELSEVIER

BOOK AID
International

Sabre Foundation



Dedication

This book is dedicated to Steven C. Hebert. Steve was at his heart a kidney physiologist, applying cutting edge technologies to address the most fundamental

concepts of kidney function and disease. He was an extraordinary scientist, clinician, mentor, leader and friend.

This page intentionally left blank



CONTENTS

VOLUME 1

Foreword xiii
Preface xv
List of Contributors xvii

I

EPITHELIAL AND NONEPITHELIAL TRANSPORT AND REGULATION

1. Epithelial Cell Structure and Polarity 3
KARL S. MATLIN AND MICHAEL J. CAPLAN
2. Mechanisms of Ion Transport across Cell
Membranes 45
LUIS REUSS AND GUILLERMO A. ALTENBERG
3. Renal Ion-Translocating ATPases 67
DOMINIQUE ELADARI, UDO HASLER AND ERIC FÉRAILLE
4. Mechanisms of Water Transport Across Cell
Membranes and Epithelia 95
GUILLERMO A. ALTENBERG AND LUIS REUSS
5. Cell Volume Control 121
FLORIAN LANG
6. Solute Transport, Energy Consumption, and
Production in the Kidney 143
TAKASHI SEKINE AND HITOSHI ENDOU
7. Electrophysiological Analysis of Transepithelial
Transport 177
HENRY SACKIN AND LAWRENCE G. PALMER
8. Renal Ion Channels, Electrophysiology of
Transport, and Channelopathies 217
JAMES D. STOCKAND
9. Microvascular Permeability and the Exchange
of Water and Solutes Across Microvascular
Walls 263
C. CHARLES MICHEL
10. External Balance of Electrolytes and Acids
and Alkali 291
MAN S. OH
11. Renal Cilia Structure, Function, and
Physiology 319
JAY N. PIECZYNSKI AND BRADLEY K. YODER
12. Intercellular Junctions 347
ALAN S.L. YU, FIONA HANNER AND JÁNOS PETI-PETERDI
13. Principles of Cell Signaling 369
LLOYD CANTLEY
14. Scaffolding Proteins in Transport Regulation 405
PAUL A. WELLING
15. The Renin–Angiotensin System 427
THU H. LE, STEVEN D. CROWLEY, SUSAN B. GURLEY AND
THOMAS M. COFFMAN
16. Neural Control of Renal Function 451
EDWARD J. JOHNS AND ULLA C. KOPP
17. Eicosanoids and Renal Function 487
MATTHEW D. BREYER, RAYMOND C. HARRIS AND
RICHARD M. BREYER
18. Extracellular Nucleotides and Renal
Function 511
DAVID G. SHIRLEY, MATTHEW A. BAILEY, SCOTT S.P. WILDMAN,
FREDERICK W.K. TAM AND ROBERT J. UNWIN
19. Paracrine Regulation of Renal Function by
Dopamine 539
PEDRO A. JOSE, ROBIN A. FELDER AND
GILBERT M. EISNER

II

STRUCTURAL AND FUNCTIONAL ORGANIZATION OF THE KIDNEY

20. Structural Organization of the Mammalian Kidney 595
WILHELM KRIZ AND BRIGITTE KAISSLING
21. Biophysical Basis of Glomerular Filtration 693
SCOTT C. THOMSON AND ROLAND C. BLANTZ
22. Glomerular Cell Biology 721
YOSHIRO MAEZAWA, DAVIDE CINA AND SUSAN E. QUAGGIN
23. Function of the Juxtaglomerular Apparatus: Control of Glomerular Hemodynamics and Renin Secretion 757
JÜRGEN B. SCHNERMANN AND HAYO CASTROP
24. Renal Cortical and Medullary Microcirculations: Structure and Function 803
THOMAS L. PALLONE AND CHUNHUA CAO
25. Molecular and Cellular Mechanisms of Kidney Development 859
KEVIN T. BUSH, HIROYUKI SAKURAI AND SANJAY K. NIGAM
26. Molecular and Cellular Mechanisms of Glomerular Capillary Development 891
JEFFREY H. MINER AND DALE R. ABRAHAMSON
27. Postnatal Renal Development 911
MICHEL BAUM, JYOTHSNA GATTINENI AND LISA M. SATLIN
28. Renal Hyperplasia and Hypertrophy 933
PAUL T. BRINKKOETTER, SIAN V. GRIFFIN AND STUART J. SHANKLAND
29. Stem Cells and Generation of New Cells in the Adult Kidney 959
JUAN A. OLIVER AND QAIS AL-AWQATI
30. Epithelial Na⁺ Channels 983
SHAOHU SHENG, KENNETH R. HALLOWS AND THOMAS R. KLEYMAN
31. Anion Channels 1019
OWEN M. WOODWARD AND WILLIAM B. GUGGINO
32. Physiology and Pathophysiology of the NaCl Co-Transporters in the Kidney 1047
GERARDO GAMBA
33. Sodium and Chloride Transport: Proximal Nephron 1081
ALAN M. WEINSTEIN
34. Sodium Chloride Transport in the Loop of Henle, Distal Convoluted Tubule, and Collecting Duct 1143
GERARDO GAMBA, WENHUI WANG AND LAURENT SCHILD
35. Mineralocorticoid Action in the Aldosterone Sensitive Distal Nephron 1181
OLIVIER STAUB AND JOHANNES LOFFING
36. Inherited Disorders of Renal Salt Homeostasis: Insights from Molecular Genetics Studies 1213
UTE I. SCHOLL AND RICHARD P. LIFTON
37. Natriuretic Hormones 1241
DAVID L. VESELY
38. Pathophysiology of Sodium Retention and Wastage 1283
BIFF F. PALMER, ROBERT J. ALPERN AND DONALD W. SELDIN
39. Physiology and Pathophysiology of Hypertension 1319
JOHN E. HALL, JOEY P. GRANGER AND MICHAEL E. HALL
40. Physiology and Pathophysiology of Diuretic Action 1353
DAVID H. ELLISON
41. Aquaporin Water Channels in Mammalian Kidney 1405
SØREN NIELSEN, TAE-HWAN KWON, HENRIK DIMKE, MARTIN SKOTT AND JØRGEN FRØKLÆR

III

FLUID AND ELECTROLYTE REGULATION AND DYSREGULATION

42. Thirst and Vasopressin 1441
GARY L. ROBERTSON
43. The Urine Concentrating Mechanism and Urea Transporters 1463
JEFF M. SANDS AND HAROLD E. LAYTON
44. Hyponatremia 1511
RICHARD H. STERNS, STEPHEN M. SILVER AND J. KEVIN HIX

45. Hypernatremic States 1541
CHRISTOPHER J. RIVARD, WEI WANG AND LAURENCE CHAN
46. Polyuria and Diabetes Insipidus 1571
DANIEL G. BICHET
47. The Molecular Biology of Renal K^+ Channels 1601
WENHUI WANG AND CHOU-LONG HUANG
48. Extrarenal Potassium Metabolism 1629
VAIBHAV SAHNI, ALEKSANDRA GMURCZYK AND ROBERT M. ROSA
49. Regulation of K^+ Excretion 1659
GERHARD MALNIC, GERHARD GIEBISCH, SHIGEAKI MUTO, WENHUI WANG, MATTHEW A. BAILEY AND LISA M. SATLIN
50. Physiopathology of Potassium Deficiency 1717
FRANCESCO TREPICCIONE, MIRIAM ZACCHIA AND GIOVAMBATTISTA CAPASSO

VOLUME 2

Foreword xiii

Preface xv

List of Contributors xvii

51. Clinical Disorders of Hyperkalemia 1741
KAMEL S. KAMEL, SHIH-HUA LIN, SUNG-SEN YANG
AND MITCHELL HALPERIN
52. Control of Intracellular pH 1773
MARK O. BEVENSEE AND WALTER F. BORON
53. SLC4 Sodium-Driven Bicarbonate
Transporters 1837
IRA KURTZ
54. The SLC4 Anion Exchanger Gene Family 1861
ANDREW K. STEWART AND SETH L. ALPER
55. Cellular Mechanisms of Renal Tubular
Acidification 1917
L. LEE HAMM, ROBERT J. ALPERN AND PATRICIA A. PREISIG
56. Chemoreceptors, Breathing and pH 1979
EUGENE NATTIE
57. Renal Ammonium Ion Production and
Excretion 1995
NORMAN P. CURTHOYS
58. Clinical Syndromes of Metabolic Alkalosis 2021
ORSON W. MOE, ROBERT J. ALPERN AND DONALD W. SELDIN
59. Clinical Syndromes of Metabolic Acidosis 2049
RETO KRAPE, DONALD W. SELDIN AND ROBERT J. ALPERN
60. Respiratory Acid–Base Disorders 2113
NICOLAOS E. MADIAS AND HORACIO J. ADROGUÉ
61. Mechanisms and Disorders of Magnesium
Metabolism 2141
KARL P. SCHLINGMANN, GARY A. QUAMME AND MARTIN KONRAD
62. Calcium Channels 2167
JOOST G.J. HOENDEROP AND RENÉ J.M. BINDELS
63. The Calcium-Sensing Receptor 2187
EDWARD M. BROWN, STEVEN C. HEBERT, DANIELA RICCARDI
AND JOHN P. GEIBEL
64. Renal Calcium Metabolism 2225
JOSÉ F. BERNARDO AND PETER A. FRIEDMAN
65. The Hormonal Regulation of Calcium
Metabolism 2249
PETER J. TEBBEN AND RAJIV KUMAR
66. Disorders of Calcium Metabolism 2273
CRISTINA DUMITRU AND JOHN WYSOLMERSKI
67. Pathogenesis and Treatment of
Nephrolithiasis 2311
FREDRIC L. COE, ANDREW EVAN AND ELAINE WORCESTER
68. Proximal Tubular Handling of Phosphate 2351
HEINI MURER, IAN C. FORSTER, NATI HERNANDO AND JÜRIG BIBER
69. Clinical Disturbances of Phosphate
Homeostasis 2369
THERESA J. BERNDT AND RAJIV KUMAR
70. Glucose Reabsorption in The Kidney 2393
CHARLES S. HUMMEL AND ERNEST M. WRIGHT
71. Kidney Transport of Amino Acids and
Oligopeptides, and Aminoacidurias 2405
SIMONE M.R. CAMARGO, VICTORIA MAKRIDES, ROBERT KLETA
AND FRANÇOIS VERREY
72. Organic Anion and Cation Transporters in Renal
Elimination of Drugs 2425
GERHARD BURCKHARDT AND HERMANN KOEPEL
73. Renal Filtration, Transport, and Metabolism of
Albumin and Albuminuria 2457
ERIK ILSØ CHRISTENSEN, RIKKE NIELSEN AND HENRIK BIRN

IV

PATHOPHYSIOLOGY OF RENAL DISEASE

74. Physiologic Principles in the Clinical Evaluation
of Electrolyte, Water, and Acid–Base Disorders 2477
DANIEL BATLLE, SHELDON CHEN AND SYED K. HAQUE
75. Biomarkers for Assessment of Renal Function
During Acute Kidney Injury 2513
PRASAD DEVARAJAN
76. Pathophysiology of Acute Kidney Injury 2527
BRUCE A. MOLITORIS AND ASIF SHARFUDDIN
77. Ischemic Renal Disease 2577
CHRISTOPHER J. COOPER, LANCE D. DWORKIN AND
WILLIAM L. HENRICH

78. Pathophysiology and Pathogenesis of Diabetic Nephropathy 2605
SHELDON CHEN, CHARBEL KHOURY AND FUAD N. ZIYADEH
79. Renal Failure in Cirrhosis 2633
PERE GINÉS, ANDRÉS CÁRDENAS AND
ROBERT W. SCHRIER
80. Autosomal Dominant Polycystic Kidney Disease 2645
STEFAN SOMLO, VICENTE E. TORRES AND MICHAEL J. CAPLAN
81. Renal Physiology and Disease in Pregnancy 2689
MARSHALL D. LINDHEIMER, KIRK P. CONRAD AND
S. ANANTH KARUMANCHI
82. Immune and Inflammatory Glomerular Diseases 2763
ANUP MANOHARON, JEFFREY R. SCHELLING, MATTHEW DIAMOND,
MOONJA CHUNG-PARK, MICHAEL MADAIO AND JOHN R. SEDOR
83. Immunologic Mechanisms of Vasculitis 2817
JONATHON W. HOMEISTER, J. CHARLES JENNETTE AND RONALD J. FALK
84. Genetic Abnormalities in Glomerular Function 2847
YOAV SEGAL AND CLIFFORD E. KASHTAN
85. Cellular Mechanisms of Drug Nephrotoxicity 2889
ROBERT JAMES WALKER AND ZOLTÁN HUBA ENDRE
86. Role of Glomerular Mechanical Stress in the Pathogenesis of Chronic Kidney Disease 2933
CLARICE KAZUE FUJIHARA AND ROBERTO ZATZ
87. Role of Proteinuria in the Progression of Renal Disease 2961
MAURO ABBATE, DANIELA MACCONI, GIUSEPPE REMUZZI
AND CARLA ZOJA
88. The Inflammatory Response to Ischemic Acute Renal Injury 2985
CHRISTOPHER Y. LU
89. Catalytic (Labile) Iron in Kidney Disease 3007
MOHAN RAJAPURKAR, RADHAKRISHNA BALIGA AND SUDHIR V. SHAH
90. Chronic Kidney Disease: Pathophysiology and the Influence of Dietary Protein 3021
BIRUH T. WORKENEH AND WILLIAM E. MITCH
91. Management of Calcium and Bone Disease in Renal Patients 3073
L. DARRYL QUARLES
92. Hematopoiesis and the Kidney 3087
ARMIN KURTZ, ROLAND H. WENGER AND KAI-UWE ECKARDT
93. Individualizing the Dialysate to Address Electrolyte Disturbances in the Dialysis Patient 3125
BIFF F. PALMER
94. Homeostasis of Solute and Water by the Transplanted Kidney 3151
J. HAROLD HELDERMAN, HEIDI SCHAEFER, ANTHONY J. LANGONE AND
SIMIN GORAL
95. Renal Disposition of Drugs and Translation to Dosing Strategies 3185
PÄR MATSSON, KATHLEEN M. GIACOMINI AND D. CRAIG BRATER
- Index 3215

This page intentionally left blank



Foreword

The focus of these volumes ever since the publication of the first edition in 1985 has been on renal physiology, conceived broadly as the analysis of those processes by which the kidney maintains the volume and composition of the body in the face of varied intake, physiologic alterations and pathologic disturbances. The text began with a detailed exploration of the basic mechanisms and their regulation that underlie the exchanges of water and electrolytes across cell membranes of the body. The mechanisms used by the kidney to make appropriate renal homeostatic adjustments were next presented.

In the early texts the renal response was attributed to the whole organ rather than to discrete molecular processes. It was the application of the methods and theories of the generalizing sciences, physics and chemistry, to biologic systems that, in subsequent additions, facilitated a reduction of the explanatory system to the more basic level of molecular biology, thereby providing a more comprehensive understanding of the basic processes that permit the physiologic adjustments.

In this 5th edition, such new and powerful disciplines as genetics and cell biology have been deployed to deepen and widen further the explanatory framework. Not only have previous chapters been extensively updated, but new chapters have been added to incorporate additional disciplines. Individual chapters, for example, now provide detailed treatment of the significance of cilia; the role of stem cells is now given special consideration. Finally, there has been a significant expansion of the section of pathophysiology, incorporating the newer findings of cell biology and genetics.

In a sense, this new edition represents a significant advancement in the march of reduction to a more fundamental level of understanding of the normal and deranged function of the kidney.

Donald W. Seldin
Gerhard H Giebisch

This page intentionally left blank



Preface

As described in its preface, the first edition of *The Kidney: Physiology and Pathophysiology*, published in 1985, focused on renal physiology, “conceived broadly as the study of those processes by which the kidney maintains the volume and composition of the body in the face of physiologic demands and pathologic disturbances.” As noted in the fourth edition, science has since then become more reductionist, an evolution that has been reflected in the content of subsequent editions. Dissection of physiologic phenomena at the level of organs and cells has been enriched by descriptions of the roles of individual molecules. While this trend in science has continued, it has been complemented by a renewed focus on integrating these molecular functions to define their roles in cellular and organ physiology, as well as their role in body homeostasis and disease. A complete understanding of physiologic and pathophysiological processes must include knowledge of individual molecules, as well as their integration into homeostatic systems that function to maintain body composition. A thorough understanding of physiologic mechanisms endows us with a greater understanding of pathophysiology and disease. Reciprocally, an understanding of disease states furnishes us with valuable information about normal physiology. The present edition continues to focus on describing the present state of knowledge of the molecules and the systems that contribute to normal physiologic function of the kidney, and the homeostatic mechanisms subserved by the kidney.

The present edition also concentrates on how these mechanisms malfunction, resulting in the diseased state. Again we will address the pathophysiology of disease states from the molecular to the system level. One of the appealing features of nephrology is the ability to utilize our understanding of normal physiology to elucidate principles of pathophysiology, and secondarily develop rational approaches to the diagnosis, treatment, and prevention of disease. Thus, the clinician addressing a patient with a fluid and electrolyte disorder need not memorize a list of possible causes or algorithms, but can logically deduce a solution through a thorough understanding of kidney function. As science continues to evolve, our understanding of the pathophysiologic basis of disease can now be applied

to a much broader set of ailments. We continue, therefore, to broaden the scope of this book so as to place greater emphasis on mechanisms of disease.

The first section of the textbook begins with general principles of epithelial and non-epithelial transport and regulation. This extensive section of the book continues a tradition established in the first edition, but extends it to include a more extensive discussion of transport regulation.

The second section of the book describes the organization of the kidney with an increased emphasis on the glomerulus, as this field continues to evolve. There follows an in-depth review of renal growth and development, including a discussion of the role of stem cells in the kidney.

This is then followed by Section Three, describing mechanisms of fluid and electrolyte regulation and dysregulation. In no other book can one find this subject addressed with the depth and thoroughness found in this textbook. The Fifth Edition includes a more in-depth discussion of recently described families of transporters, integrating this information to describe their role in physiologic and pathophysiological processes.

Section Four, the pathophysiology of renal disease, has been extended as our knowledge of renal dysfunctions and their contribution to renal ailments has expanded. Many chapters deal with common everyday clinical issues, but are presented in the context of pathophysiological mechanisms. A series of chapters focus on mechanisms of progression of renal disease, as the importance of interrupting or forestalling this progression has assumed great importance in clinical nephrology. A thorough understanding of the roles of glomerular pressure, proteinuria, inflammation, and oxidants will help researchers and clinicians prevent renal failure, decreasing the need for dialysis and transplant.

The evolution of our understanding of kidney function and dysfunction derives from sequential discoveries made by a series of investigators, each benefiting from the accomplishments of their predecessors. The same can be said for this textbook. Originally conceived by two of the greatest renal physiologists of the twentieth century, Donald Seldin and Gerhard

Giebisch, it was passed on to Steve Hebert and one of the present editors. As the present editors, it is our hope to continue the book's commitment to science, and its role in our understanding and practice of nephrology, and in so doing to honor the previous editors for all that they have contributed to the book, to nephrology, to epithelial physiology, and to science in general.



List of Contributors

Dale R. Abrahamson, PhD Department of Anatomy and Cell Biology, University of Kansas Medical Center, Kansas City, KS, USA

Qais Al-Awqati, MB, ChB Departments of Medicine and Physiology, Columbia University, New York, NY, USA

Robert J. Alpern, MD Office of the Dean Yale, University School of Medicine, New Haven, CT, USA

Guillermo A. Altenberg, MD, PhD Department of Cell Physiology and Molecular Biophysics, and Center for Membrane Protein Research, Texas Tech University Health Sciences Center, Lubbock, Texas, TX, USA

Matthew A. Bailey, PhD British Heart Foundation Centre for Cardiovascular Science, University of Edinburgh, UK

Michel Baum, MD Departments of Pediatrics and Internal Medicine, University of Texas Southwestern Medical Center, Dallas, TX, USA

Daniel G. Bichet, MD, MSc Hôpital du Sacré-Coeur de Montréal, Departments of Medicine and Physiology, University of Montreal, Montréal, Québec, Canada

Roland C. Blantz, MD University of California and VA San Diego Healthcare System, San Diego, CA, USA

Matthew D. Breyer, PhD Biotechnology Discovery Research Eli Lilly and Company Indianapolis, IN and Division of Nephrology, Department of Medicine, Vanderbilt University, Nashville, TN

Richard M. Breyer Division of Nephrology, Department of Medicine, Vanderbilt University, Nashville, TN, USA

Paul T. Brinkkoetter University Hospital Cologne, Cologne, Germany

Kevin T. Bush, PhD Department of Pediatrics University of California San Diego, La Jolla, CA, USA

Lloyd Cantley, MD Section of Nephrology, Department of Internal Medicine, Yale University School of Medicine, New Haven, CT, USA

Chunhua Cao, MD, PhD Division of Nephrology, Department of Medicine, University of Maryland at Baltimore, Baltimore, MD, USA

Giovambattista Capasso, MD Chair of Nephrology, Department of Internal Medicine, Faculty of Medicine, Second University of Naples, Italy

Hayo Castrop, PhD Institute of Physiology, University of Regensburg, Germany

Laurence Chan, MD, PhD, FRCP University of Colorado Denver, Aurora, Colorado, USA

Davide Cina Samuel Lunenfeld Research Institute, Mount Sinai Hospital and Institute of Medical Science, Toronto, Ontario, Canada

Thomas M. Coffman, MD Division of Nephrology, Department of Medicine, Duke University and Durham VA Medical Centers, Durham, North Carolina, USA, Cardiovascular and Metabolic Disorders Research Program, Duke-NUS, Singapore

Steven D. Crowley, MD Division of Nephrology, Department of Medicine, Duke University and Durham VA Medical Centers, Durham, North Carolina, USA

Henrik Dimke, MSc Department of Biomedicine, University of Aarhus, Aarhus, Denmark; The Samuel Lunenfeld Research Institute, Mt. Sinai Hospital, Toronto, Ontario, Canada

Gilbert M. Eisner, Mb Georgetown University Medical Center, USA

Dominique Eladari, MD, PhD INSERM U872, Centre de Recherche des Cordeliers, Paris, France

David H. Ellison, MD Oregon Health & Science University & VA Medical Center, Portland, OR, USA

Hitoshi Endou, MD, PhD Department of Pharmacology and Toxicology, Kyorin University School of Medicine, Tokyo, Japan

Robin A. Felder, PhD University of Virginia Health Sciences Center, USA

Eric Féraille, MD, PhD Department of Cell Physiology and Metabolism and Service of Nephrology, University Medical Center, Geneva, Switzerland

Jørgen Frøkiær, MD, DMSc Water and Salt Research Center, Department of Clinical Physiology, Aarhus University Hospital-Skejby, Aarhus N, Denmark

Gerardo Gamba, MD, PhD Molecular Physiology Unit, Department of Nephrology and Mineral Metabolism, Instituto Nacional de Ciencias Médicas y Nutrición Salvador Zubirán, and Instituto de Investigaciones Biomédicas, Universidad Nacional Autónoma de México, Mexico City, Mexico

Jyothsna Gattineni, MD Department of Pediatrics, University of Texas Southwestern Medical Center, Dallas, TX, USA

Gerhard Giebisch, MD Dept. of Cellular & Molecular Physiology, Yale University School of Medicine, New Haven, CT, USA

Aleksandra Gmurczyk, MD The Feinberg School of Medicine, Northwestern University, Chicago, IL, USA

- Joey P. Granger, PhD** Department of Physiology and Biophysics and Department of Medicine, University of Mississippi Medical Center, MS, USA
- Sian V. Griffin, MD** University Hospital Wales, Health Park, Cardiff, Wales
- William B. Guggino, PhD** Department of Physiology, The Johns Hopkins University School of Medicine, Baltimore, MD, USA
- Susan B. Gurley, MD, PhD** Division of Nephrology, Department of Medicine, Duke University and Durham VA Medical Centers, Durham, North Carolina, USA
- John E. Hall, PhD** Department of Physiology and Biophysics and Department of Medicine, University of Mississippi Medical Center, MS, USA
- Michael E. Hall, MD** Department of Physiology and Biophysics and Department of Medicine, University of Mississippi Medical Center, MS, USA
- Kenneth R. Hallows, MD, PhD** Renal-Electrolyte Division, Department of Medicine and Department of Cell Biology and Physiology, University of Pittsburgh, Pittsburgh, PA, USA
- Fiona Hanner** Department of Physiology and Biophysics and Zilkha Neurogenetic Institute, University of Southern California Keck School of Medicine, Los Angeles, CA, USA
- Raymond C. Harris, MD** Division of Nephrology, Department of Medicine, Vanderbilt University, Nashville, TN, USA
- Udo Hasler** Department of Cell Physiology and Metabolism and Service of Nephrology, University Medical Center, Geneva, Switzerland
- J. Kevin Hix, MD** University of Rochester School of Medicine and Dentistry, Rochester, New York, USA
- Chou-Long Huang, MD, PhD** University of Texas, Southwestern Medical Center, Dallas, TX, USA
- Edward J. Johns, BSc, PhD, DSc** Department of Physiology, University College Cork, Cork, Republic of Ireland
- Pedro A. Jose, MD, PhD** Division of Nephrology, Department of Medicine, University of Maryland School of Medicine, USA
- Brigitte Kaissling** Institute for Anatomy, University of Zürich, Switzerland
- Thomas R. Kleyman, MD** Renal-Electrolyte Division, Department of Medicine and Department of Cell Biology and Physiology, University of Pittsburgh, Pittsburgh, PA, USA
- Ulla C. Kopp, PhD** Departments of Internal Medicine & Pharmacology, University of Iowa Carver College of Medicine, Iowa City, IA, USA
- Wilhelm Kriz** Department of Anatomy and Developmental Biology, Medical Faculty Mannheim, University of Heidelberg, Mannheim, Germany
- Tae-Hwan Kwon** Department of Biochemistry and Cell Biology, School of Medicine, Kyungpook National University, Taegu, Korea
- Florian Lang** Department of Physiology, University of Tübingen, Tübingen, Germany
- Harold E. Layton** Department of Mathematics, Duke University, Durham, NC, USA
- Thu H. Le, MD** Division of Nephrology, Department of Medicine, University of Virginia, Charlottesville, VA, USA
- Richard P. Lifton** Departments of Genetics and Internal Medicine, Howard Hughes Medical Institute, Yale University School of Medicine, New Haven, CT, USA
- Johannes Loffing** Institute of Anatomy, University of Zurich, Zurich, Switzerland
- Yoshiro Maezawa** Samuel Lunenfeld Research Institute, Mount Sinai Hospital, Toronto, Ontario, Canada
- Gerhard Malnic** Universidade de Sao Paulo, Instituto de Ciencias Biomedicas, Departamento de Fisiologie e Biofisica, Sao Paulo, Brazil
- Karl S. Matlin, PhD** Laboratory of Epithelial Pathobiology, Department of Surgery, University of Chicago, IL, USA
- C. Charles Michel** Department of Bioengineering, Imperial College, London, UK
- Jeffrey H. Miner, PhD** Department of Medicine, Renal Division, Washington University School of Medicine, St. Louis, MO, USA
- Shigeaki Muto, MD, PhD** Universidade de Sao Paulo, Instituto de Ciencias Biomedicas, Departamento de Fisiologie e Biofisica, Sao Paulo, Brazil
- Søren Nielsen, MD, PhD** Water and Salt Research Center, Department of Biomedicine, University of Aarhus, Aarhus, Denmark
- Sanjay K. Nigam, MD** Departments of Pediatrics, Cellular and Molecular Medicine, Medicine (Division of Nephrology and Hypertension), and Bioengineering, University of California San Diego, La Jolla, CA, USA
- Man S. Oh, MD** State University of New York, Downstate Medical Center, Brooklyn, NY, USA
- Juan A. Oliver** Department of Medicine, Columbia University, New York, NY, USA
- Thomas L. Pallone, MD** Division of Nephrology, Department of Medicine, University of Maryland at Baltimore, Baltimore, MD, USA
- Biff F. Palmer, MD** Professor of Internal Medicine, Department of Internal Medicine, Division of Nephrology, University of Texas Southwestern Medical Center, Dallas, TX, USA
- Lawrence G. Palmer, PhD** Department of Physiology & Biophysics, Weill Medical College of Cornell University, New York City NY, USA
- János Peti-Peterdi, MD, PhD** Department of Physiology and Biophysics and Zilkha Neurogenetic Institute, University of Southern California Keck School of Medicine, Los Angeles, CA, USA
- Jay N. Pieczynski** Department of Cell Biology, University of Alabama at Birmingham, Birmingham, AL, USA

Susan E. Quaggin Samuel Lunenfeld Research Institute, Mount Sinai Hospital; Institute of Medical Science; Division of Nephrology, St. Michael's Hospital University of Toronto, Toronto, Ontario, Canada

Luis Reuss, MD Department of Cell Physiology and Molecular Biophysics, and Center for Membrane Protein Research, Texas Tech University Health Sciences Center, Lubbock, Texas, TX, USA

Christopher J. Rivard, PhD University of Colorado Denver, Aurora, Colorado, USA

Gary L. Robertson, MD The Feinberg Medical School of Medicine, Northwestern University, Chicago, IL, USA

Robert M. Rosa, MD The Feinberg School of Medicine, Northwestern University, Chicago, IL, USA

Henry Sackin, PhD Department of Physiology & Biophysics, Rosalind Franklin University/The Chicago Medical School, North Chicago, IL, USA

Vaibhav Sahni, MD The Feinberg School of Medicine, Northwestern University, Chicago, IL, USA

Hiroyuki Sakurai, MD Department of Pharmacology and Toxicology, Kyorin University School of Medicine, Mitaka, Tokyo, Japan

Jeff M. Sands, MD Renal Division, Department of Medicine, Emory University School of Medicine, Atlanta, GA, USA

Lisa M. Satlin, MD Departments of Pediatrics and Medicine, Mount Sinai School of Medicine, New York, NY, USA

Laurent Schild Département de Pharmacologie et de Toxicologie, Université de Lausanne, Lausanne, Switzerland

Jürgen B. Schnermann, MD National Institute of Diabetes, and Digestive and Kidney Diseases, National Institutes of Health, Bethesda, MD, USA

Ute I. Scholl, MD Departments of Genetics and Internal Medicine, Howard Hughes Medical Institute, Yale University School of Medicine, New Haven, CT, USA

Takashi Sekine, MD Department of Pediatrics, Toho University School of Medicine, Ohashi Hospital, Tokyo, Japan

Donald W. Seldin, MD Department of Internal Medicine, University of Texas Southwestern Medical Center, Dallas, TX, USA

Stuart J. Shankland, MD University of Washington, Seattle, Washington, USA

Shaohu Sheng, MD Renal-Electrolyte Division, Department of Medicine, University of Pittsburgh, Pittsburgh, PA, USA

David G. Shirley, PhD UCL Centre for Nephrology, University College London Medical School, UK

Stephen M. Silver, MD Clinical Professor of Medicine, University of Rochester School of Medicine and Dentistry, Rochester, New York, USA

Martin Skott Department of Biomedicine, University of Aarhus, Aarhus, Denmark

Olivier Staub Department of Pharmacology & Toxicology, University of Lausanne, Lausanne, Switzerland

Richard H. Sterns, MD Rochester General Hospital and University of Rochester School of Medicine and Dentistry, Rochester, New York, USA

James D. Stockand, PhD Department of Physiology, University of Texas Health Science Center, San Antonio, TX, USA

Frederick W.K. Tam, PhD, FRCP Kidney and Transplant Institute, Imperial College School of Medicine, UK

Scott C. Thomson, MD University of California and VA San Diego Healthcare System, San Diego, CA, USA

Francesco Trepiccione Chair of Nephrology, Department of Internal Medicine, Faculty of Medicine, Second University of Naples, Italy

Robert J. Unwin, PhD, FRCP UCL Centre for Nephrology, University College London Medical School, UK

David L. Vesely, MD, PhD University of South Florida Cardiac Hormone Center, and James A. Haley Veterans Medical Center, Tampa, FL, USA

Wei Wang, MD University of Colorado Denver, Aurora, Colorado, USA

Wenhui Wang, MD Department of Pharmacology, New York Medical College, Valhalla, NY, USA

Alan M. Weinstein, MD Department of Physiology and Biophysics, Weill Medical College of Cornell University, New York, NY, USA

Paul A. Welling, MD Department of Physiology, University of Maryland School of Medicine, Baltimore, MD, USA

Scott S.P. Wildman, PhD Medway School of Pharmacy, The Universities of Kent and Greenwich at Medway, UK

Owen M. Woodward Department of Physiology, The Johns Hopkins University School of Medicine, Baltimore, MD, USA

Bradley K. Yoder, PhD Department of Cell Biology, University of Alabama at Birmingham, Birmingham, AL, USA

Alan S.L. Yu, MB, BChir Division of Nephrology and Hypertension, and The Kidney Institute, University of Kansas Medical Center, Kansas City, KS, USA

Miriam Zacchia Chair of Nephrology, Department of Internal Medicine, Faculty of Medicine, Second University of Naples, Italy

This page intentionally left blank

S E C T I O N 1



EPITHELIAL AND NONEPITHELIAL
TRANSPORT AND REGULATION

This page intentionally left blank



Epithelial Cell Structure and Polarity

Karl S. Matlin¹ and Michael J. Caplan²

¹Laboratory of Epithelial Pathobiology, Department of Surgery, University of Chicago, IL, USA

²Department of Cellular and Molecular Physiology, Yale University School of Medicine, New Haven, CT, USA

INTRODUCTION

Many of the chapters in this volume are devoted to the mechanisms through which the nephron is able to convert the glomerular filtrate into concentrated urine that is responsive to the metabolic status of the organism as a whole. The multifactorial nature of this problem means it needs to be treated at several levels of resolution. A meaningful description of renal tubular functions requires an understanding of the nephron's properties as an integrated tissue, as well as those of its constituent parts, including the cells and molecules that contribute to its transport functions.

As detailed elsewhere in this volume, the nephron is a remarkably heterogeneous structure. Throughout its length, the renal tubule is notable for the marked variations in the morphologic and physiologic properties of its epithelial cells, reflecting the numerous and diverse responsibilities that neighboring segments are called on to fulfill. At the tissue level, the function of the kidney is critically dependent on the geometry and topography of the nephron. The precise juxtaposition of various epithelial cell types, which manifest distinct fluid and electrolyte transport capabilities, in large measure specifies the course of modifications to which the glomerular filtrate is exposed. This dependence on geometry also extends to renal function at the cellular level.

The Nature and Physiologic Implications of Epithelial Polarity

Despite their variations in form and function, all of the epithelial cells that line the nephron share at least one fundamental characteristic. Like their relatives in other tissues, all epithelial cells are polarized. The plasma membranes of polarized epithelial cells are

divided into two morphologically and biochemically distinct domains.¹⁻⁶ In the case of the nephron, the apical surfaces of the epithelial cells face the tubular lumen. The basolateral surface rests on the epithelial basement membrane, and is in contact with the interstitial fluid compartment. The lipid and protein components of these two contiguous plasmalemmal domains are almost entirely dissimilar.¹⁻⁶ It is precisely these differences that account for the epithelial cell's capacity to mediate the vectorial transport of solutes and fluid against steep concentration gradients. Thus, the subcellular geometry of renal epithelial cells is critical to renal function.

The principal cell of the collecting tubule provides a useful illustration of the importance of biochemical polarity for renal function. As described in other contributions to this volume, the principal cell is required to resorb sodium against a very steep concentration gradient. It accomplishes this task through the carefully controlled placement of ion pumps and channels.⁷⁻⁹ The basolateral plasma membrane of the principal cell, like that of most polarized epithelial cells, possesses a large complement of Na⁺/K⁺-ATPase. This basolateral sodium pump catalyzes the energetically unfavorable transport of three sodium ions out of the cell in exchange for two potassium ions, through the consumption of the energy embodied in one molecule of ATP.¹⁰ The apical surface of the principal cell lacks sodium pump, but is equipped with a sodium channel, which allows sodium ions to move passively down their concentration gradient.¹¹ Through the action of the sodium pump the intracellular sodium concentration is kept low and the driving forces across the apical membrane favor the influx of sodium from the tubular fluid through the apical sodium channels. Thus, the combination of a basolateral Na⁺/K⁺-ATPase and an apical sodium channel lead to the vectorial movement of

sodium from the tubule lumen to the interstitial space against its electrochemical gradient. This elegant mechanism is critically dependent upon the principal cell's biochemical polarity. If the sodium pump and the sodium channel occupied the same plasmalemmal domain, then the gradients generated by the former could not be profitably exploited by the latter. Thus, the vectorial resorption or secretion of solutes or fluid is predicated upon the asymmetric distribution of transport proteins in polarized epithelial cells.

The fact that epithelial cells manifest biochemical polarity implies that they are endowed with the capacity to generate and maintain differentiated subdomains of their cell surface membranes.^{1–6} Newly synthesized membrane proteins must be targeted to the appropriate cell surface domain, and retained there following their delivery. During tissue development, cell division, and wound healing, plasmalemmal domains must be delimited and their biochemical character established. Clearly, specialized machinery and pathways must exist through which this energetically unfavorable compositional asymmetry can be supported. The nature of these specializations has been the subject of intense study for decades. While firm answers are not yet available, a number of fascinating model systems have been developed, and valuable insights have emerged. This chapter will focus on what is known of the processes through which tubular epithelial cells create their polarized geometry.

EPITHELIAL CELL STRUCTURE: MORPHOLOGY AND PHYSIOLOGY

The renal tubular epithelium is composed of a remarkably varied collection of cell types, ranging from the highly specialized glomerular epithelial cells with foot processes that facilitate filtration of the blood through the basement membrane, to the simple squamous epithelium of the loop of Henle. A detailed delineation of its morphologic diversity is beyond the scope of this chapter. However, certain essential features are shared among all cell types in the tubular epithelium and, indeed, most other epithelial cell types found in the body. Among these are a differentiated, microvillar apical surface facing the tubular lumen, a lateral surface specialized for cell–cell interactions and regulation of transepithelial permeability, and a basal surface that adheres to the basement membrane. Furthermore, as described previously, the basolateral plasma membrane is particularly important in ion transport, because it is the location of the Na^+/K^+ -ATPase and the cell is able to modulate its surface area in response to the transport activity of individual cell types. The cell–cell adhesive relationships are

responsible for the integrity of the epithelium, and also dictate the permeability of the epithelium to small molecules that, in part, give each segment of the epithelium its physiological identity. Furthermore, adhesion of epithelial cells to each other and to the basement membrane sends spatial signals to the cells essential for the establishment and maintenance of epithelial cell polarity. In the following sections the morphology and functional composition of the apical and basolateral domains of the plasma membrane will be described, after detailing the nature of the junctional complex that mediates cell–cell adhesion.

The Junctional Complex

All epithelial cells, including those of the kidney tubule, are joined together along the lateral surfaces by a series of intercellular junctions first noted by their characteristic ultrastructural appearance and relative locations on the lateral plasma membrane.^{12,13} These include the tight junction or *zonula occludens*, the adherens junction (*zonula adherens* or intermediate junction), desmosomes, and gap junctions. In most mammalian epithelia the tight junction is located at the apical-most edge of the lateral membrane closely followed by the adherens junction. Desmosomes and gap junctions have less specific locations on the lateral membrane. Desmosomes and gap junctions will be described briefly, followed by a more comprehensive description of tight junctions and adherens junctions, because of their essential functions in the organization, physiology, and morphogenesis of epithelia.

Desmosomes are large, multiprotein complexes primarily responsible for the mechanical strength of cell–cell interactions.¹⁴ They are formed after the assembly of adherens and tight junctions. By transmission electron microscopy they appear as discrete, focal concentrations of dense material in the cytoplasm of adjacent cells, as well as in the intercellular space.¹³ In contrast to adherens and tight junctions, desmosomes do not form an adhesive belt around the entire epithelial cell, but are a kind of “spot weld” at various points on adjacent lateral membranes. They are composed of both integral membrane proteins of the cadherin family called desmogleins and desmocollins, and peripheral membrane proteins known as desmoplakins, as well as a variety of other protein constituents.¹⁴ Adjacent cells adhere to each other through cadherin-mediated interactions. The peripheral components then provide mechanical stability to this interaction, via keratin intermediate filaments in the cytoplasm of each cell.¹⁵ Ultrastructurally, these appear as a mass of hair-like protrusions interacting in parallel with each plaque and then splaying out into the cytoplasm.^{13,14}

In this manner, desmosomes link all cells in the epithelium. While there is evidence that desmosomal components may play an active role in regulating some aspects of cell–cell adhesion and even gene expression,¹⁶ in general their function is considered to be relatively passive.

Gap junctions are so named because of the characteristic 3 nm gap between adjacent cells that is evident using transmission electron microscopy.^{17,18} Examination of freeze-fracture specimens, which permits visualization of the internal topography of membranes, reveals the gap junction as a discrete array of intramembranous particles or connexons.^{17,18} Each connexon is composed of five identical connexins, a family of transmembrane proteins. Connexons on adjacent cells interact through their extracytoplasmic domains to form a series of low-resistance channels. These permit the passage of small molecules of less than 1 kDa, linking neighboring cells in the epithelium both electrically and metabolically. In the kidney, it is likely that gap junctions play important roles during morphogenesis and repair, although their precise functions have not been investigated in detail.^{17,18}

Among the numerous functions subserved by epithelia, perhaps the most important is that of a barrier between the intra- and extracorporeal spaces. In the case of the kidney, the extracorporeal space is defined by the lumen of the renal tubule. That the chemical composition of urine differs substantially from that of the interstitial extracellular fluid bathing the epithelial basement membranes is evidence that the barrier provided by the tubular epithelium is tight to both small and large molecules. There are two components to this barrier, arranged in parallel.^{19–21} The first is comprised of the apical and basolateral membranes of the epithelial cells, which together serve as a pair of series resistances to the flow of solutes across the epithelia. The second barrier is provided by the tight junction or *zonula occludens* that controls movement of molecules between the cells along the so-called paracellular pathway.^{20–29}

The tight junction defines a border between the apical and basolateral plasma membranes. In columnar and cuboidal cells of the renal epithelium, it is found at the apical extremity of the lateral membrane and in the plane of the apical surface. Analysis by transmission electron microscopy originally suggested that the tight junction is a zone of partial fusion between the plasma membranes of adjacent cells.¹³ Although this is no longer believed to be the case (see below), the ultrastructure of the junctions is consistent with this interpretation. When cells that have been treated with osmium are examined at high magnification, their membranes are distinguished by a characteristic pattern. The two leaflets of the lipid bilayer appear as a “unit membrane,” defined by a pair of darkly stained parallel lines separated from

one another by 5–10 nm.³⁰ In areas corresponding to the tight junction, the four parallel lines representing the two unit membrane of adjacent cells are replaced by three lines, which led to the suggestion that the two outer leaflets contributed by the neighboring cells have in some way merged to form a new trilaminar membrane structure.¹²

The putative outer leaflet fusion suggested by morphologic studies received some support from examination of lipid mobility in polarized epithelial cells. The mobility of outer leaflet lipids is restricted by the tight junction.^{31,32} Labeled lipid probes inserted into the outer leaflets of epithelial apical or basolateral plasma membranes have unimpeded mobility within their respective domains, but cannot cross the tight junction.^{31,32} Furthermore, outer leaflet lipids are unable to diffuse between neighboring epithelial cells through the tight junction. In contrast, inner leaflet lipids can apparently move freely between the two plasma membrane domains, suggesting that the tight junction presents no barrier to their diffusion. These observations are consistent with a model of the tight junction, in which the outer leaflets of the lipid bilayer participate in the formation of some junctional structure, while the inner leaflet remains unperturbed. These results also suggest that the lipid composition of the apical inner leaflet is necessarily identical to that of the basolateral one, because any differences would quickly be randomized by diffusion. Thus, the differences in lipid compositions of the apical and basolateral surfaces alluded to in the introduction to this chapter must be entirely contributed by the constituents of the outer leaflet.^{32,33}

Electron microscopy has provided further insights into the structure of the tight junction. Examination of freeze-fracture replicas of epithelial cells reveals the tight junction to be composed of continuous branching and interwoven strands that surround the entire perimeter of the cell.³⁴ These strands appear as elevations in the P or cytoplasmic fracture face, and are matched by grooves in the E or external face. In some cell types the strands have a fibrillar appearance, and no discrete subunit structure can be resolved. In other cell types, and in samples not fixed with glutaraldehyde, the strands can appear more as a series of particles.³⁴ Although some early models postulated that the strands were composed of unusually structured lipids, it is now certain that they are primarily composed of integral membrane proteins (see below). Observations of a number of cell types with different amounts of transepithelial electrical resistance revealed a rough correlation between the number and complexity of the anastomosing strands and the degree of transepithelial electrical resistance. While this correlation certainly exists in at least some epithelia,³⁵ the amount of

resistance is now known to be a function of the specific complement of proteins making up tight junctions in different cells.

The first tight junction protein identified was, appropriately, ZO-1 (*zonula occludens-1*).³⁶ ZO-1, however, turned out to be a cytoplasmic peripheral membrane protein, suggesting that other, integral transmembrane proteins capable of mediating cell–cell contact and the intermembrane permeability barrier must exist. Shortly thereafter, occludin, a multispanning membrane protein, was identified, followed by many other proteins.²¹ It is now clear that the tight junction is an extremely complex structure composed of at least three different families of transmembrane proteins including: multiple claudins; occludin and other members of the MARVEL family; and the junctional adhesion molecules or JAMS.²¹ Additional peripheral membrane proteins are also part of the tight junction, including ZO-1, -2, and -3, and cingulins. It is also evident that the functions of these protein complexes extend beyond regulating solute permeability to participation in epithelial cell polarization.³⁷

Claudins are the most important tight junctional proteins controlling paracellular permeability of small molecules.^{38–43} They are the major protein constituent of the tight junctional strands seen in freeze-fracture; expression of claudins in fibroblasts produces characteristic strands and promotes cell–cell adhesion.^{21,38,41,43–45} The claudin family consists of at least 24 members in mammals. All are tetraspanning transmembrane proteins of 20–27 kD, with two extracellular loops. With one exception, the cytoplasmic C-terminal sequence of claudins interacts with ZO-1, -2, and -3. Interacting claudins on neighboring epithelial cells create charge selective channels, with the overall permeability of the tight junction to ions dependent on the particular mix of claudins expressed in the cell.^{21,44} This was illustrated dramatically in the renal epithelial cell line MDCK (Madin–Darby canine kidney) when expression of claudin 8, in addition to other endogenous claudins, reduced the paracellular movement of mono- and divalent cations without affecting the permeability of anions or uncharged solute molecules.⁴⁶ In the kidney tubular epithelium, cells of the proximal tubule, which has a trans-epithelial electrical resistance of 6–10 Ωcm^2 , express claudins 2, 6, 9, 10, and 11, while cells of the collecting duct, with a much higher resistance of 1000 Ωcm^2 , express claudins 3, 4, 6, 7, 8, 10, and 14^{29,47} (Figure 1.1). Other cell types along the nephron express other combinations, yielding a range of increasing resistances in the proximal-to-distal direction^{29,47} (Figure 1.1).

The selective barrier created primarily by claudins is sometimes referred to as the “pore pathway,” because it permits movement only of small ions and other uncharged small solute molecules. However, in

at least some epithelia, there is also a kind of “leak pathway” that allows passage of larger molecules, including macromolecules.²¹ The nature of the leak pathway and its regulation is poorly understood. Occludin, which is also a tetraspanning membrane protein unrelated to claudins, may play a role in the leak pathway, together with ZO-1 and the actin cytoskeleton. Even though it is counterintuitive, an electrically tight pore pathway can co-exist with an active leak pathway, although the molecular and structural basis of this has not been fully clarified.²¹

The tight junction is a structure whose function is highly dependent on interactions between integral and peripheral components and the actin cytoskeleton. ZO-1 and its family members are perhaps the most important class of proteins linking the various tight junctional proteins together.^{36,48,49} ZO-1 contains multiple PDZ (PSD95-Dlg-ZO-1) protein interaction domains. These bind to both claudins and JAMs, while other regions of the molecule bind to occludin and actin. ZO-1 is also capable of binding to components usually identified with adherens junctions, and to a wide variety of signaling molecules.²¹ While it is still valid to view the regulation of paracellular permeability as the primary function of the tight junction, it is more appropriate to think of the overall structure as a component of a larger apical junctional complex responsible for a multiplicity of adhesive, signaling, and membrane trafficking functions.

Originally, the tight junction was looked at as a stable, static structure in intact epithelia. Recent results using, among other approaches, expression of fluorescent tight junction proteins in cultured and intact epithelia, indicate that, in fact, the tight junction is highly dynamic.⁵⁰ In the intestine, the epithelial leak pathway will open to permit uptake of glucose beyond the capacity of the Na^+ -glucose transporter in the apical membrane. This process is controlled by the actomyosin cytoskeleton, since drug-induced actin depolymerization, as well as activation of myosin light chain kinase (MLCK), compromises the epithelial barrier.^{50–52} Breakdown in the barrier is accompanied by simultaneous endocytosis of occludin, both implicating occludin in the regulation of the leak pathway and further demonstrating the cell’s capacity to reshape the junction. Tumor necrosis factor (TNF), which is involved in the pathogenesis of Crohn’s disease, will cause barrier breakdown through a mechanism also dependent on MLCK.⁵⁰ Although these studies of tight junction plasticity have concentrated on the intestine, it would be surprising if similar mechanisms were not operable in the renal tubular epithelium, especially in the proximal tubule which morphologically resembles intestinal absorptive cells, and where uptake of a variety of filtered materials occurs.

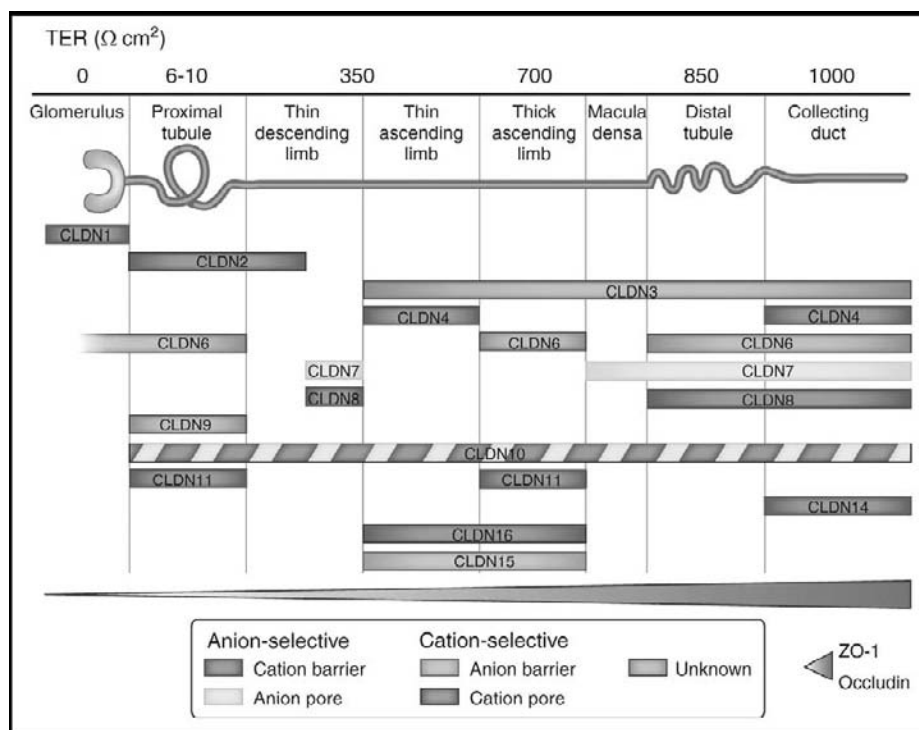


FIGURE 1.1 The relationship between transepithelial resistance and claudin subtype expression along the nephron. (Reprinted from ref. [29].)

The adherens junction, or *zonula adherens*, forms a belt just below the tight junction in most epithelial cells, connecting them via extracellular interactions and cytoplasmic linkages to the actin cytoskeleton (Figure 1.2). In the electron microscope, adherens junctions appear as a dense, somewhat amorphous concentration of sub-membranous staining, with a mass of impinging actin filaments.¹³ The major adhesive component of the adherens junction is E-cadherin.^{25,53,54} E-cadherin is a single-pass transmembrane protein that consists of a series of calcium-binding extracellular or EC repeat domains, and a cytoplasmic tail that interacts with members of the catenin family. In adherent cells E-cadherin is concentrated in the adherens junction, but can also be more diffusely distributed over the lateral plasma membrane. Adhesion between cells occurs through *trans* interactions between the EC1 domains contributed by different cells in the presence of calcium, which maintains the proper conformation of the extracellular part of E-cadherin. Interactions occur initially through individual molecules, but are then consolidated and strengthened through lateral interactions of individual units.

The stability of E-cadherin-mediated adhesion is dependent on the binding of catenins to the cytoplasmic tail of E-cadherin.^{25,54} P120-catenin binds to a specific octapeptide located in the cytoplasmic juxtamembranous part of the cytoplasmic tail, and appears to be responsible for maintaining the stability of E-cadherin in the membrane, preventing its endocytosis and degradation. It is also involved in signaling related to cell motility,

and is a substrate for the Src-receptor tyrosine kinase. The second catenin that associates with E-cadherin is β -catenin, which binds to the carboxy terminus of the cytoplasmic tail in a phosphorylation-dependent manner.^{25,54} Certain serine phosphorylations of E-cadherin increase the affinity of the β -catenin–E-cadherin interaction, while phosphorylation of serines on β -catenin disrupt the interaction with E-cadherin, and with α -catenin. In addition to its role in cell–cell adhesion, β -catenin is itself an important signaling molecule that is capable of entering the nucleus and regulating transcription of genes related to cell proliferation and differentiation.^{16,55,56} Its function in transcription is carefully regulated by the Wnt signaling pathway by keeping the cytoplasmic concentration of β -catenin low, either through its interaction with E-cadherin or through its degradation by a mechanism dependent on a cytoplasmic “destruction complex” and ubiquitination.

In the adherens junction, β -catenin serves as a bridge between E-cadherin and α -catenin that, in turn, interacts with the actin cytoskeleton. In this manner, cell–cell adhesion through the adherens junction is given both a degree of mechanical stability and mobility through actomyosin contraction.⁵⁴ Originally the β -catenin– α -catenin–actin interaction was believed to be somewhat static, but recent evidence indicates that it is very dynamic. Alpha-catenin can exist as either a monomer or dimer, with the monomer able to bind β -catenin, but not actin, and the dimer able to bind actin, but not β -catenin. Three pools then exist in the cell: a monomer

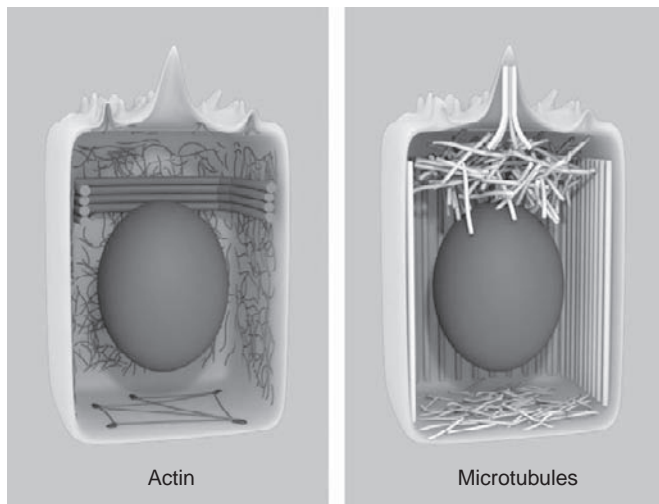


FIGURE 1.2 The distribution of actin filaments and microtubules in polarized renal epithelial cells, based on the Madin–Darby canine kidney (MDCK) cell line. (Images courtesy of Jonathan Bowen and Elias T. Spoliotis, Drexel University, Philadelphia, Pennsylvania.)

pool bound to β -catenin; a free cytoplasmic monomer pool; and a dimer pool bound to actin. As the adherens junction forms and consolidates, a high concentration of monomers is transported to a localized site on the membrane through β -catenin interactions. This then drives dimer formation and a dynamic linkage to the actin cytoskeleton. Localized concentration of α -catenin dimers can also inhibit Arp2/3, a mediator of actin branching essential for cell migration, and thus facilitate the transformation from a migrating cell to an adherent polarized cell during processes such as injury repair.⁵⁴ The recognition that the adherens junction is dynamic and plays a role in cell motility has helped to transform our view of epithelia from that of a static sheet of cells to one of interlocking cells capable of constant motion and remodeling, all the while maintaining a precise permeability barrier between the inside and outside compartments of the body.

The Apical Microvillar Surface

The apical brush border membrane is perhaps best epitomized by the one that graces the epithelial cells of the proximal tubule. Named for its appearance, the proximal tubular brush border is comprised of densely packed parallel microvilli which rise like the bristles of a brush from the level of the tight junctions to a height of 1 to 1.3 μm . The proximal tubular brush border is by far the most luxuriant to be found in the nephron; although the apical membranes of other renal epithelial cell types are endowed with small collections of microvillus-like structures, much less is known about the structural specializations characteristic of the apical membranes of more distal renal epithelial cells.⁵⁷

The functions subserved by apical microvilli are not entirely clear. Certainly their most dramatic and obvious effect upon the properties of the apical membrane is manifest as a tremendous amplification of the apical membrane surface area. For the proximal tubule this amplification is in the order of 20-fold.^{58,59} As is the case for the epithelia of the small intestine, it is through this redundancy that the proximal tubular epithelial cells markedly increase the efficiency of both their absorptive and degradative functions.

Physiologically, the proximal tubule is responsible for the resorption of $\sim 60\%$ of the filtered load of fluid and solutes.⁶⁰ Furthermore, it mediates the digestion of essentially all of the polysaccharides and peptides present in the glomerular filtrate, and transports the resultant sugars and amino acids from the lumen to the interstitial fluid space.⁵⁸ It is apparent, therefore, that the epithelial cells of the proximal tubule must be specially equipped, in order to cope efficiently with the comparatively enormous quantities of fluid and substrates that rapidly transit this nephron segment. The presence of an extravagant brush border greatly increases the fraction of the tubular fluid that comes into close contact with the enzymatic and transport systems arrayed on the microvillar surfaces prior to its passage from this tubule segment into the descending loop of Henle. Concomitantly, it proportionally multiplies the number of enzymatic and transport systems available to modify the substrates dissolved in the tubular fluid. Thus, the brush border membrane provides the scaffolding for the relatively massive arsenal of enzymatic and transport machinery required to accomplish the proximal tubule's function as a high-capacity and high-throughput absorptive system.

Ultrastructurally, a microvillus is composed of a bundle of ~ 19 parallel thin filaments that are linked to one another and to the overlying surface membrane by protein cross bridges.^{61,62} The thin filaments extend well beyond the base of the microvillus, and are anchored in a dense matrix of fibers oriented parallel to the plane of the membrane. This meshwork, referred to as the terminal web, underlies the entire apical surface and anastomoses with the filaments that radiate from the lateral desmosomes and zonulae adherens (Figure 1.2). The functional implications of these structural arrangements have become clearer as their components have been biochemically identified.^{63,64}

The thin filaments that form the microvillar core are composed of actin^{61,65} (Figure 1.2). Ultrastructural studies employing heavy meromyosin reveal that all of the filaments in the bundle share a single polarity, and are oriented with their nucleating end towards the microvillar tip. At their termination in the microvillar tip the filaments are received by an electron-dense cap whose molecular identity has yet to be established.⁶¹

As they emerge from the base of the microvillus, the actin filaments are caught up in the fibers of the terminal web (Figure 1.2). Fodrin, or non-erythroid spectrin, comprises one of the major components of this network.^{61,64,66} It appears to function beneath the brush border as an actin fiber cross-linker. Another of the chief constituents of this fibrillar matrix is a non-muscle form of myosin II that belongs to the same myosin subfamily as its skeletal muscle counterpart. Bipolar myosin thick filaments appear to interact with the actin filaments as they sweep out of the microvillar sheath to join the terminal web.^{61,65,67} Paired anti-parallel myosin filaments cross-link the actin filaments of neighboring microvilli to one another, forming a connection which bears close comparison to the actin–myosin arrangement characteristic of the striated muscle sarcomere. The analogy is strengthened by the presence in the microvillar rootlet of tropomyosin, a protein that functions in skeletal muscle to regulate the interaction between actin and myosin.^{67,68}

This marked molecular similarity between the terminal web and the skeletal muscle contractile unit prompted speculation that this arrangement might also be functionally homologous. A number of investigators have postulated that activation of myosin-based contraction at the microvillar base might lead to microvillar shortening.⁶⁹ Repetitive activation of such a mechanism would lead to a piston-like extension and retraction of these membranous processes, which in turn might stir the surrounding tubular fluid. Such a mixing motion is certainly teleologically appealing, in that it would help to ensure that the tubular fluid is uniformly exposed to the enzymatic and transport systems of the proximal tubular apical membrane surface. No evidence for any such concerted and dynamic properties of microvilli has yet been gathered.

Biochemical studies have shed light on the identities and functional properties of some of the proteins which contribute to the interfibrillar cross bridges observed in transmission electron micrographic profiles of microvilli. Howe and Mooseker identified a protein of molecular weight 110 kDa that participates in cross-linking the filaments of intestinal microvilli to the plasma membrane.⁷⁰ This protein exhibits a high affinity for the calcium-binding protein calmodulin, which participates in the transduction of a number of calcium-regulated phenomena.⁷⁰ Of further interest was the fact that the 110 kDa protein manifests a myosin-like Mg-ATPase activity.⁷¹ Addition of ATP to intact microvilli results in solubilization of the 110 kDa protein, and disruption of the cross-links between the actin filaments and the microvillar membrane.^{72,73} Thus, attachment of the plasma membrane to the thin filaments may be regulated by ATP and calcium. The degree to which this putative capacity for structural modulation plays a role in microvillar function has yet to

be clarified. Subsequent molecular analysis revealed that the brush border 110 kDa protein belongs to the myosin I family of unconventional myosin molecules.^{74,75} Unlike skeletal muscle myosin (which is assigned to the myosin II classification), brush border myosin I molecules possess a single globular head group, and do not form bipolar filaments.^{71,72,76,77} Members of the myosin I family, including brush border myosin (myosin Ia), have been found to associate with the membranes of intracellular vesicles, prompting the hypothesis that these motor proteins serve to propel vesicles through the cytoplasm along actin filament tracks.^{78,79} Co-localization studies have demonstrated that brush border myosin I and the microtubule-dependent motor protein dynein can be found together on the membranes of post-Golgi vesicles.⁸⁰ This observation has inspired the hypothesis that apically-directed vesicles depart the Golgi along microtubule tracks powered by the action of dynein. Upon their arrival at the actin-rich terminal web, they switch engines and are carried the rest of the way to the brush border by myosin I.⁸¹ While brush border myosin I is abundantly expressed in intestinal epithelial cells, it may be present at lower levels in the renal proximal tubule.⁸² Since the myosin I family is large and diverse, however, it is extremely likely that an as-yet-undefined member of this class subserves similar structural and mechanical functions in the epithelial cells of the kidney.^{83,84}

Another protein that apparently participates in the organization of the microvillus has a molecular weight of 95 kDa, and has been dubbed villin.⁸⁵ Villin belongs to a large family of actin-binding proteins.⁸⁶ Prominent in its structure is a pair of sequence domains that appear to be involved in associations with f-actin. The presence of this tandem repeat justifies the contention that villin mediates the bundling of actin fibers. It is interesting to note that villin is a calcium-binding protein, and that interaction with calcium alters its behavior in the presence of actin filaments.⁸⁷ In experiments carried out with purified villin in solution, it has been found that this protein bundles actin filaments when the free calcium concentration is less than 1 μ M. When the calcium concentration rises to 10 μ M, villin severs actin filaments into short protofilaments. At intermediate calcium concentrations, villin binds to actin filaments at their growing ends, forming a cap that prevents further elongation. Due to the dynamic nature of the microfilament polymer, this capping results in the formation of shortened filaments. It is not known whether these calcium-dependent activities of villin are manifest *in vivo*. If villin does indeed sever or shorten actin filaments within the living cell, it would seem likely that perturbations which produce elevations of intracellular calcium concentrations may lead to structurally significant alterations in the organization of the microvillar scaffolding. During embryonic development, villin is expressed throughout

the cytoplasm of epithelial cells prior to the elevation of a brush border.⁸⁸ At later stages, villin becomes localized to the cytosolic surface of the apical membrane, and is subsequently incorporated into forming microvilli. This behavior has led to the suggestion that the localization of villin to the apical surface is a watershed event in the biogenesis of microvilli. Thus, the formation of inter-filamentous bridges, presumably mediated by villin, may be a critical first step in the organization of the microvillar infrastructure. Supporting this model are the results of experiments in which Caco-2 intestinal epithelial cells were stably transfected with a vector encoding antisense villin mRNA.⁸⁹ The consequent reduction in villin expression resulted in a loss of the brush border and mis-sorting of a subset of apical microvillar proteins. It must be noted, however, that results from gene knockout experiments argue against an obligate role for villin in microvillus formation.⁹⁰ Mice whose villin genes have been disrupted, and which produce no villin protein, are able nonetheless to generate morphologically and apparently physiologically normal brush borders. Presumably, other components of the microvillar infrastructure can shoulder the cross-linking and organizational duties normally performed by villin. Such functional redundancy is typical of biological systems endowed with architecture as esthetically elegant and complex as that which graces the microvillus.

While villin is limited in its distribution to those cell types endowed with brush borders, another actin-bundling component of the microvillus is present in numerous structures. Plastin-1, which is also known as fimbrin, is a 68 kDa polypeptide associated with the interfilamentous cross bridges that can also be detected in hair cell stereocilia and in ruffled borders.⁹¹ Plastin-1 is clearly a multivalent actin-binding protein, and participates in the cross-linking of the microvillar actin filament array. Structural studies suggest that the cross-linking activity of plastin-1 constitutes the principal means through which the parallel actin filaments are interconnected in microvilli,⁹² and the length and organization of brush borders are abnormal in plastin-1 knockout mice.⁹³ A third bundling protein, known as espin, also participates in the organization of the microvillar actin filaments.⁹⁴ While microvilli appear to form normally in the absence of espin,⁹⁵ espin overexpression leads to microvillar lengthening⁹⁶ by exerting subtle effects on the relative rates of actin filament polymerization and depolymerization. Simultaneous knockout of plastin-1, villin, and espin produces animals whose brush borders are short, and characterized by reduced numbers of disorganized actin filaments and mislocalized myosin. Interestingly, localization of enzymes that are normally concentrated in microvilli is markedly compromised in epithelial cells from these animals, suggesting that the organization of the

overlying plasma membrane is dependent upon the structural integrity of the microvillar actin bundle.⁹⁷

Several other polypeptides, associated with the microvillus core and the terminal web, have also been identified. Among the most interesting and important of these is ezrin, a member of the ezrin–radixin–moesin family of proteins.⁹⁸ The C-terminal tails of these polypeptides bind to actin filaments, while their N-termini interact with proteins in the membrane. A number of proteins involved in the generation or regulation of intracellular second messengers associate in macromolecular complexes with ezrin–radixin–moesin family members, suggesting that in addition to functioning as linkers these proteins may also act as scaffolding for the assembly of components involved in signal transduction. Knockout of ezrin expression results in shortened and poorly formed brush border microvilli, and perturbations in the organization of the terminal web.⁹⁹ In addition, ezrin participates in forming complex molecular scaffolds that regulate and stabilize the expression of solute transport proteins in the apical membranes of renal epithelial cells.¹⁰⁰

The terminal web mentioned above consists of three morphologically distinguishable domains. In addition to the cytoskeletal fibers that receive the rootlets of the microvilli, fibers that arise from desmosomes and the *zonula adherens* contribute to this meshwork. The desmosomal fibers consist primarily of 10 nm intermediate filaments composed of keratins.¹⁵ At the level of the *zonula adherens*, the cell is ringed by a complex of randomly polarized actin filaments which also contains myosin and tropomyosin⁶⁷ (Figure 1.2). *In vitro* experiments have demonstrated that this ring has the capacity to contract circumferentially.¹⁰¹ This capacity has led to the idea that contraction of the *zonula adherens* ring might contribute to the alterations in tight junctional permeability which have been observed in several epithelial systems in response to certain second messengers and osmotic stress, as described earlier.²⁰ Thus, activation of sodium-coupled glucose uptake in cultured intestinal epithelial cells has been shown to induce a decrease in transepithelial resistance. This effect is dependent upon the activity of myosin light chain kinase.^{51,52} It is thought that by shortening in a “purse-string” fashion, these filaments might actually draw neighboring cells away from one another, and thus modify the structure and permeability of the occluding junctions. The relevance of this model to the functioning of renal epithelia has yet to be established.

The anisotropy and structural complexity that characterize the filamentous core of the microvillus apparently also extend to its overlying plasma membrane. The proteins embedded in, and associated with, the plasmalemma of the proximal tubule brush border are not uniformly distributed over its surface, but rather

are restricted to specific subdomains. This lateral segregation is epitomized by the behavior of two transmembrane polypeptides, maltase and gp330. The 300 kDa enzyme maltase is distributed over the entire surface of the microvilli themselves, but is absent from the intermicrovillar membrane regions.^{102,103} In contrast, the heavily glycosylated gp330 (also known as megalin) is restricted in its distribution to these intermicrovillar regions. The restriction of megalin to the intermicrovillar regions appears to be mediated by its interactions with protein components of the endocytic machinery. Ultrastructural examination of the intermicrovillar regions reveals the presence of coated pits. The cytosolic surface of the plasma membrane in these domains is coated with an electron dense material that biochemical and immunoelectron microscopic studies have demonstrated to be clathrin.¹⁰³ The presence in these intermicrovillar pits of morphologic and compositional features associated with the process of endocytosis has led investigators to believe that this domain mediates the retrieval of large peptides and proteins from the proximal tubular fluid. The proximal tubular epithelial cells are responsible for capturing and degrading any proteins that pass through the glomerular filtration barrier.⁵⁸ This function is apparently served by the profusion of coated pits and vesicles that decorate the surfaces of membranes at the microvillar base. Megalin is a member of the LDL receptor family and, together with cubulin, serves as a receptor that binds to and mediates the uptake of filtered proteins and peptides. Megalin knockout mice exhibit low molecular weight proteinuria, establishing the critical role for megalin as the proximal tubule's pre-eminent scavenger.

Finally, it is worth noting that most or all of the epithelial cells of the nephron are endowed with a single primary cilium (Figure 1.2). This non-motile cilium possesses a ring of nine microtubules, but lacks the central pair of microtubules found in motile cilia. This primary cilium appears to serve sensory functions. Bending the primary cilium, in response to flow or mechanical stimuli, induces calcium signaling in renal epithelial cells. Furthermore, the functional integrity of the primary cilium appears to be a prerequisite for the maintenance of normal renal tubular architecture. A number of cystic diseases of the kidney are attributable to mutations in genes encoding proteins found in cilia.^{104–108} Similarly, mice in which expression of ciliary proteins has been disrupted develop cysts. The mechanisms through which loss of the cilium's mechanosensory functions leads to cystic transformation remain to be established.

The Basolateral Plasma Membrane

The rigid subservience of structure to function so elegantly exemplified by the apical microvillar

membrane also extends to the basolateral surface of the epithelial plasma membrane. As was mentioned above, the basolateral membrane possesses the ion pumps that power the transepithelial resorption of solutes and water. The resorptive capacity of a given cell type is thus largely dependent on the quantity of ion pumps embedded within its basolateral membrane. This parameter appears, in turn, to be roughly proportional to the surface area encompassed by this membrane domain.⁸ Consequently, renal epithelial cells that participate in resorption of large quantities of ions and fluid (such as those of the proximal tubule), as well as cells that carry out resorption of ions against steep concentration gradients (such as those of the thick ascending limb of the loop of Henle), are endowed with basolateral plasma membranes whose surface areas are amplified through massively redundant infoldings.

As was detailed in the discussion of the apical membrane, the lateral distribution of proteins within the plane of the basolateral membrane is not uniform. This fact is most dramatically illustrated by epithelial cell types that lack the deeply invaginated basolateral infoldings discussed above. Studies have demonstrated that the Na^+/K^+ -ATPase is concentrated in subdomains of the basolateral membranes of small intestinal epithelial cells.¹⁰⁹ The sodium pump is essentially restricted to the lateral membranes of these cells, and is absent from the basal surfaces that rest on the basement membrane. Dislodging these cells from the underlying basement membrane produces a redistribution of the sodium pump throughout the entire basolateral surface. These results suggest that the sodium pump is either actively or passively prevented from entering the basal domain of the plasma membrane, in some manner that is dependent on an intact interaction with the basement membrane. The meshwork of cytoskeletal elements associated with those sites at which the epithelial cell is anchored to the basement membrane may be too dense to allow membrane proteins such as the sodium pump to penetrate. Conversely, cytoskeletal restraints whose integrity requires cell attachment to the basement membrane might retain the sodium pump within the lateral subdomains. In each of these scenarios, the cytoskeleton plays an important role in determining the subcellular distribution of a transmembrane protein. Research over the years has made it quite clear that the cytoskeleton plays a critical role in defining polarized domains, and in determining aspects of their protein compositions.^{110–125}

The Basement Membrane

The basement membrane, while not strictly part of the epithelium, is such an essential contributor to epithelial function that it cannot be excluded from any comprehensive description of the renal epithelium. The basement

membrane is a thin layer of secreted and assembled extracellular matrix that underlies all epithelia and endothelia in the body, and also surrounds skeletal muscle fibers and peripheral nerves.¹²⁶ In the past, the terms basement membrane and basal lamina were used inconsistently to describe morphological features of this layer, but there is no longer sufficient reason to distinguish these terms from each other, and they may be used interchangeably.¹² In the kidney, the tubular basement membrane is comparable to that found under other epithelia in the body, while that of the glomerulus is more complex and unusual.^{127–129} In the glomerulus, the basement membrane is synthesized from proteins secreted by both podocytes and the closely apposed endothelium, resulting in a double-thick layer of matrix proteins that is an essential part of the glomerular blood filter. Diseases affecting the glomerular basement membrane often lead to compromise of the filter and proteinuria. Detailed discussion of this barrier and its specialized and distinctive composition is beyond the scope of our overall discussion of the biology of the renal epithelium, and will not be pursued in this chapter.

Basement membranes are visible by transmission electron microscopy of glutaraldehyde-fixed and heavy metal stained thin sections of epithelia, and classically appear as an electron dense layer (*lamina densa*) separated from an electron lucid (*lamina lucida*) layer adjacent to the basal epithelial surface.¹² While these morphological features were originally believed to have a structural basis, there is now evidence that they may be fixation artifacts. All basement membranes are composed of a common set of protein components which include laminins, type IV collagen, heparan sulfate proteoglycans, and nidogen, although the specific types of these can vary depending on both developmental stage and tissue, as well as accompanying pathology.¹²⁶ The most important component is probably laminin, because of its role in both assembly of the basement membrane and signaling.¹³⁰ Laminins consist of large (~400–800 kDa) heterotrimeric secreted glycoproteins. In mammals, five α -, three β -, and three γ -subunits have been identified in at least 15 different heterotrimeric complexes. Prototypical laminins are cross-shaped molecules in which the short arms of the cross are contributed by the amino-termini of each subunit, and the stem by a coiled-coil made up of the carboxy-terminal halves of each subunit.¹³⁰ Typically, the amino-termini of each subunit consist of a globular LN or polymer domain that is involved in basement membrane assembly. The carboxy-terminus of the α -subunit is folded into a series of five globular domains (G1–5) that are essential for binding to the cell surface. Laminins are named according to their subunit composition, such that LM-511, the most common laminin in the kidney, is composed of the α 5-, β 1-, and γ 1-subunits.¹³¹ Like all collagens, collagen IV is a trimeric molecule composed of

combinations of various type IV α -subunits that fold into an elongated triple helix.¹²⁶ In contrast with fibrillar collagens such as collagen I, type IV collagen does not form bundles, because of the persistence of carboxy-terminal noncollagenous domains (NC1) and interruptions in the collagen repeats within the triple-helix forming regions that render the molecule more flexible. The most common types of proteoglycans found in the basement membrane are perlecan and agrin.¹²⁶ Each is a complex molecule that contains a variety of structural motifs resembling those found in laminins, in addition to substantial negatively-charged heparan sulfate polysaccharides. Nidogen (also called entactin) is a relatively small basement membrane protein that acts primarily to link laminin and collagen IV in the assembled structure. In addition to the core components of laminin, collagen IV, and proteoglycans, a variety of other minor components may also be present under particular, poorly-defined conditions, including extracellular matrix proteins normally considered to be primarily components of the interstitial matrix, such as fibronectin.

Basement membranes initially form during embryogenesis, and are then remodeled during development.^{132,133} In addition, *de novo* basement membrane assembly may occur in adults following injuries that interrupt basement membrane continuity. Assembly is believed to occur through a mass-action process driven primarily by laminin polymerization.^{126,130,134} Laminin molecules secreted by epithelial cells bind to receptors on the basal cell surface until the density of bound molecules permits formation of heterotrimeric complexes of α , β , and γ amino-terminal LN domains contributed by three different laminin molecules. The resulting structure is a polymerized network of molecules closely associated with the basal surface. Subsequently, collagen IV intercalates into this primary network to form a secondary network created by head-to-tail interactions between collagen IV molecules. The two networks are then linked through nidogen interactions between laminin and collagen, and other molecules, including notably proteoglycans, fill the spaces within the interlocked laminin and collagen networks.^{126,130,134}

During pathological processes such as renal cyst formation and recovery from ischemic injury to the tubular epithelium, there is evidence that the atypical laminin isoform LM-332 is expressed.^{135–138} This laminin consists of the α 3-, β 3-, and γ 2-subunits, with both the α 3- and γ 2-subunits lacking amino-terminal LN domains, precluding the molecule from participating in typical network formation. The specific function of LM-332 in these pathological situations is unknown, but one hypothesis is that it interacts with prototypical laminins, such as LM-511, to terminate or even disrupt normal basement membrane assembly, facilitating remodeling of the basement membrane, and possibly

signaling the epithelium to differentiate into a more plastic state suitable for injury repair.¹³⁹

The basement membrane interacts with epithelial cells primarily by binding to the integrin family of extracellular matrix receptors. Integrins are a superfamily of cell adhesion receptors found in nearly all cells.¹⁴⁰ Each integrin consists of a heterodimer of α - and β -subunits, both of which are transmembrane glycoproteins. A total of 18 α - and 8 β -subunits are known in mammals, resulting in at least 24 heterodimers.¹⁴⁰ Although integrins are known primarily as receptors for extracellular matrix proteins, they may also participate in cell–cell adhesion.¹⁴¹ Epithelial cells of the kidney and other organs typically express an array of integrins, including multiple forms with the $\beta 1$ -subunit, such as $\alpha 2\beta 1$ and $\alpha 3\beta 1$, as well as integrins with the $\beta 3$ -, $\beta 5$ -, and $\beta 6$ -subunits in combination with αV .¹⁴² (A. Manninen, personal communication). Many, if not all, epithelial cells also express integrin $\alpha 6\beta 4$.^{140,142} The $\beta 4$ -subunit is uniquely found in epithelial cells and, unlike most other epithelial integrins, interacts on the cytoplasmic side with cytokeratins, rather than the actin cytoskeleton. Integrin $\alpha 2\beta 1$ is a collagen receptor, while $\alpha 3\beta 1$ and $\alpha 6\beta 4$ are receptors for multiple isoforms of laminin.¹⁴⁰ The various αV -containing integrins are receptors for ligands containing the binding sequence arginine–glycine–aspartate (RGD), such as fibronectin and vitronectin.¹⁴⁰ They may also play a role in activation of transforming growth factor β (TGF β), which is important in epithelial repair and other processes.¹⁴³ The MDCK cell line, for example, expresses $\alpha 2\beta 1$, $\alpha 3\beta 1$, $\alpha 6\beta 4$, and several αV -containing integrins, with $\alpha 3\beta 1$ and $\alpha 6\beta 4$ mediating adhesion to different laminins, and with $\alpha V\beta 3$ (and possibly other αV integrins) activating TGF β to turn on specific laminin expression during wound-healing.^{143,144} In the kidney tubule, the complement of integrins expressed varies along the nephron, as does the expression of their extracellular matrix ligands, underlining their involvement not only in cell adhesion, but also in differentiation.¹⁴²

In adherent cells, most integrins facilitate adhesion through dynamic interactions with the actin cytoskeleton.^{145–148} Linkage to actin is mediated by adapter protein complexes that bind to integrin cytoplasmic tails and then to actin. Proteins found in these complexes include talin, which binds directly to integrins and activates their adhesive properties, paxillin, α -actinin, and vinculin.^{145–148} Studies of migrating cells suggest that initial adhesive interactions occur through small “focal complexes” that form on leading lamellipodia and are linked to branched actin through the action of the Rac1, a small GTPase of the rho family. As the cell moves over these contacts, they mature into larger “focal adhesions” that associate with robust actin stress fibers (at least in culture) controlled by another GTPase RhoA and its effectors.^{145–149} While the general

elements of this model have been somewhat validated in epithelial cells during wound healing, the status of focal complexes and focal adhesions in mature polarized epithelia of the kidney and elsewhere remain, for the most part, unexplored. As mentioned previously, $\alpha 6\beta 4$ is a novel integrin, in that it is epithelial-specific and is capable of assembling adhesion complexes that interact with the cytokeratin cytoskeleton.¹⁴⁰ In normal skin, $\alpha 6\beta 4$ is an essential part of hemidesmosomes.¹⁵⁰ These are large protein complexes containing a second transmembrane protein BP180 in addition to $\alpha 6\beta 4$, as well as the cytoplasmic proteins BP230 and plectin that interact with cytokeratin filaments. The type of hemidesmosome found in the skin (type I) is visible as a dense plaque on the cytoplasmic surface of the basal plasma membrane under the electron microscope.¹⁵¹ In the kidney such structures have not been reported. However, it is possible that a less developed type of hemidesmosome that is not apparent ultrastructurally (type II) is present in the kidney, although this has not been examined.¹⁵¹

In addition to their role in mechanical adhesion, focal complexes and focal adhesions are also platforms for signaling.^{145–149} A variety of kinases including, notably, focal adhesion kinase (FAK) and members of the src family of tyrosine kinases, associate with integrin adhesion complexes and are activated by binding to the extracellular matrix. Subsequent signals then activate downstream serine/threonine kinases, such as integrin-linked kinase (ILK), and MAP kinases, such as ERK, to regulate a diverse range of processes including proliferation, migration, and apoptosis. Indeed, at least 180 different cytoskeletal, adapter, and signaling proteins are known to be associated with integrin adhesion complexes, depending on the cell type and circumstances.¹⁴⁹

In addition to integrins, other membrane proteins are involved in epithelial cell adhesion to the extracellular matrix, including dystroglycan, a laminin receptor, and possibly a membrane-bound form of the Lutheran antigen.^{129,130} There is evidence that glycolipids may also serve as transient laminin receptors.^{152,153} While it is not proven that any of these receptors play a direct role in epithelial polarization, they may act indirectly by affecting assembly of the basal lamina.^{152,153}

BIOGENESIS OF EPITHELIAL POLARITY

In the kidney, polarization of epithelial cells occur under two different circumstances: early development of the tubular epithelium; and repair of an existing epithelium following injury. In mammals, formation of the renal tubular epithelium is initiated by induction of the metanephric mesenchyme by the invading ureteric bud.¹⁵⁴ Following induction, cells of the mesenchyme

form aggregates known as condensates, and these subsequently differentiate into polarized epithelial cells facing a central lumen. Extension of this lumen and further, more specialized, differentiation of epithelial cells eventually forms the nephron. In the case of injury by, for example, nephrotoxic substances or ischemia, the existing polarized tubular epithelium is disrupted in spots.^{155,156} Cells at the periphery of these damaged areas then convert from relatively sessile cells polarized along an apical-to-basal axis to flatter, more migratory cells that now have front–rear rather than apical–basal polarity and the capacity to proliferate, enabling them to fill gaps in the epithelium. Once continuity has been achieved, apical–basal polarity is restored.^{155,156} While front–rear and apical–basal polarization would seem to be quite distinctive, there is evidence that many of the important molecules and signals are shared. Indeed, as we are now beginning to understand, even front–rear polarization during injury repair is a close mechanistic cousin of apical–basal polarization.¹⁵⁷

In the following sections, our current understanding of the mechanism of epithelial polarization will be described, after a brief introduction to the predominant experimental system used to study these processes.

In Vitro Systems

The kidney's complicated architecture and cellular heterogeneity renders it a poor substrate for studies designed to examine dynamic cell biological processes. Over the past four decades, the vast majority of research into the mechanisms through which epithelia generate and maintain their polarized phenotype has made use of several continuous lines of cultured epithelial cells. These cell lines retain many of the differentiated properties of their respective parent tissues *in vitro*. Thus, LLC-PK1 cells resemble the proximal tubule (although their precise origin is uncertain).¹⁵⁸ Similarly, Caco-2, HT-29, and T84 cells behave like their progenitors, the colonocytes of the large intestine.¹⁵⁸ Most importantly for this discussion, they manifest in culture the biochemical and morphologic features of the polarized state. Perhaps the best characterized and most heavily used of these culture models is the Madin–Darby canine kidney (MDCK) cell line (Figure 1.3). MDCK cells were originally derived from normal dog kidney in 1959, and grown in culture as a partially transformed line; that is, MDCK cells grow immortally as a monolayer and will not form tumors in nude mice.^{159,160} Although their precise point of origin along the nephron is not entirely clear, their physiological and morphological properties suggest that they derive from cells of the thick ascending limb, distal tubule or collecting tubule.¹⁶¹

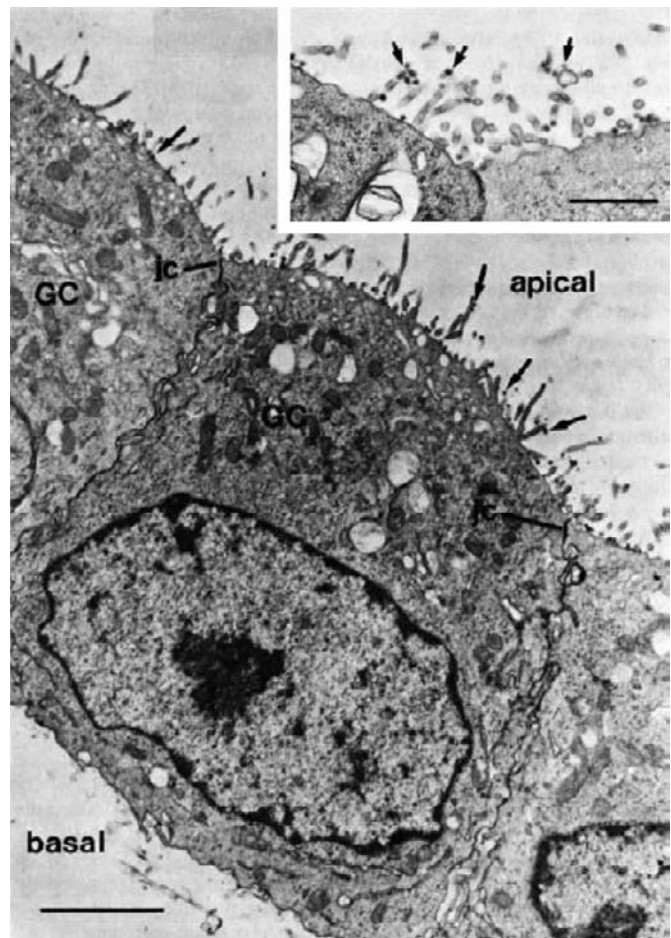


FIGURE 1.3 Influenza virus buds from the apical surface of polarized MDCK cells. MDCK cells were grown on a hydrated collagen gel, infected with influenza virus for 6 hours, and prepared for electron microscopy. The arrows denote mature virions which assemble at, and bud from, the apical surface. No virus particles are detected at the basal or lateral surfaces. Bar represents 3.0 μm (inset bar represents 1.0 μm) (GC: Golgi complex; jc: junctional complex). (Reprinted with permission ref. [1].)

The first clues to the polarized nature of the MDCK cell line came from the direct observation of these cells' capacity for vectorial transport. When grown on impermeable substrata, MDCK cells form domes (also called blisters or hemicysts).¹⁶² Physiological studies have demonstrated that domes develop as a result of the transepithelial transport of solutes from the apical media to the basolateral surface.¹⁶³ Water that passively follows these solutes results in the generation of the fluid-filled blisters. It is fair to say that domes arise in regions where the cells have literally pumped themselves up off the dish. In keeping with this dramatic propensity for unidirectional solute movement, each MDCK cell manifests a polarized distribution of ion transport proteins, including several routes for sodium entry into its apical membrane, and approximately one million molecules of the

Na^+/K^+ -ATPase in its basolateral plasmalemma.¹⁶⁴ The popularity of MDCK cells for polarity research developed out of the seminal observations of Rodriguez-Boulant and Sabatini in 1978.¹⁶⁵ In studies of enveloped virus budding from infected MDCK cells, these investigators found that influenza virus assembles at, and buds from, the apical cell surface (Figure 1.3). Of even greater significance was the demonstration that the spike glycoproteins which populate the membranes of these viruses accumulate preferentially at the cell surface from which budding is to occur.¹⁶⁶ Thus, the influenza hemagglutinin (HA) protein is predominantly on the apical surface early in infection. Similarly, the G protein of vesicular stomatitis virus (VSV) is almost exclusively basolateral in infected cells. The viral proteins provided investigators with the first experimentally manipulatable system for the study of membrane protein sorting. A large number of studies have subsequently elucidated the sorting of many endogenous MDCK cell proteins, as well as exogenous proteins expressed from vectors. This system remains the most thoroughly investigated paradigm and, as will be detailed below, has yielded important insights into the nature of pathways and signals that participate in membrane protein targeting and the overall biogenesis of epithelial polarity.

More recently, investigators have endeavored to develop new cell lines to study particular aspects of renal cell biology.^{167–170} For example, immortalization genes from human papillomavirus or a hybrid between adenovirus and SV40 have been used to create permanent cell lines from human proximal tubule cells. These lines are of particular interest because of the proclivity of the proximal tubule to suffer injury following ischemic insult. The cell lines retain some differentiated characteristics of the proximal tubule, including expression of brush border markers and sodium dependent/phlorizin-sensitive sugar transport.^{169,170} Cultures of cell lines derived in this fashion are not, however, always able to stably maintain the uniform morphology of a simple epithelium, limiting their usefulness for studies of epithelial polarity. More promising results have been obtained using cell lines derived from mice constitutively expressing immortalization factors as transgenes. Among these is the BUMPT-306 line derived from the mouse proximal tubule.^{167,168} While certainly not perfect, this line does grow as a simple epithelium, and has the added advantage of providing an *in vitro* correlate to *in vivo* mouse experiments.

The study of epithelial polarization using cell lines has been facilitated by culturing cells in configurations that more closely resemble *in vivo* conditions (Figure 1.4 and 1.5). For example, many varieties of epithelial cells can be grown on permeable filter supports.^{171,172} Originally, these were designed to mimic the Ussing chamber used

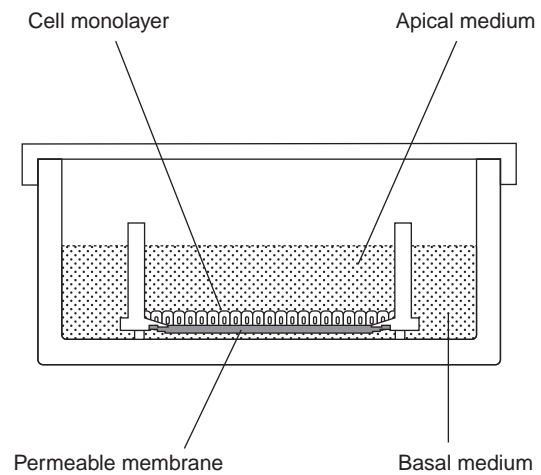


FIGURE 1.4 Epithelial monolayers can be grown on permeable filter supports. As depicted in the diagram, a porous filter, composed of cellulose acetate or polycarbonate, forms the bottom of a cylindrical cup. Epithelial cells are plated on top of the filter, and the cup is placed in a well filled with media. When the cells become confluent, the resultant monolayer forms a barrier between the media bathing the apical surface and the media in communication with the basolateral surface. This system thus provides investigators with simultaneous and independent access to both plasmalemmal domains.

for physiological studies, but later turned out to also be very useful for biochemical and morphological experiments. In their most common commercially-available configuration, these supports are composed of polycarbonate filters with pore sizes typically in the range of $0.4\ \mu\text{m}$ that form the bottom cup. The cup is then suspended in a plastic well containing culture medium, and medium is also added to the inner compartment of the cup (Figure 1.4). Cells are plated on the upper surface of the filter. When a confluent monolayer is formed, it effectively creates a barrier between media compartments. The medium in the interior of the cup bathes the epithelial apical surface, whereas the basolateral surface communicates with the exterior media compartment through the pores of the filter (Figure 1.4). As epithelial cells in the kidney and other organs would normally receive most of their nutrition from the basolateral (serosal) surface, permeable supports are, in a sense, a more natural growth environment than impermeable tissue culture plastic or glass. Indeed, there is some evidence that epithelial cells are more polarized in filter cultures than on solid substrata.¹⁷³ Furthermore, the use of filters for the culture of epithelial cells permits investigators simultaneous and independent access to the apical and basolateral plasmalemma surfaces.^{174–176} This useful capacity has been extensively exploited in the experiments described in the protein sorting section of this chapter.

In addition to permeable supports, a number of investigators also culture renal and other epithelial cell lines embedded in a gel of collagen type I or other

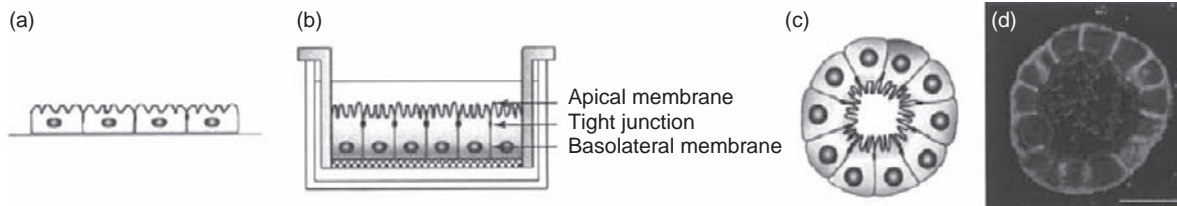


FIGURE 1.5 Two- and three-dimensional cultures of polarized epithelial cells. Epithelial cell lines may be grown on conventional impermeable substrata such as plastic or glass (a), or on permeable supports (b). In both cases, the provision of a flat, two-dimensional surface may provide spatial signals that normally would be generated by the cells themselves *in vivo*. In this regard, three-dimensional culture of cells in collagen gels, where a polarized cyst develops over 7 to 10 days (c), may more accurately represent the *in vivo* environment. In (d), an MDCK cell cyst is fluorescently labeled with antibodies to β -catenin to highlight the basolateral surface. *Reprinted with permission from ref. [178].*

extracellular matrix molecules (Figure 1.5). These are called three-dimensional (3D) cultures, to distinguish them from more common two-dimensional (2D) cultures on either solid or permeable surfaces.^{177,178} As with permeable supports, the idea behind 3D cultures is that placing the epithelial cell in an environment in which it is surrounded by extracellular matrix similar to that of the interstitium more closely resembles the *in vivo* environment. While that conclusion is subject to debate, there is no doubt that certain epithelial phenotypes are more readily expressed in 3D than in 2D cultures.^{177,178} Nevertheless, these phenotypes are often slow to develop, frequently taking 7–10 days, and may occur asynchronously; this, and the inaccessibility of the cultures, somewhat limits their usefulness for biochemical studies. With the advent of high resolution confocal fluorescence microscopy and the wide array of fluorescent proteins and probes, the impact of this limitation is lessened. In the case of MDCK cells, individual suspended cells develop into polarized cysts or, when stimulated with certain growth factors, tubules. As will be described below, use of 3D cultures has led to important fundamental observations about epithelial cell polarization.^{177,178} As a final note on the experimental use of 2D and 3D culture modalities, it is important to point out that formation of polarized cysts in 3D may be most closely analogous to the formation of the primordial kidney epithelium from condensed metanephric mesenchyme during development. In contrast, *in vitro* polarization of kidney epithelial cells in 2D cultures is more akin to the repair of existing kidney tubular epithelia following injury, a scenario that requires the spreading, migration, and proliferation of cells on a pre-existing surface to re-establish a contiguous epithelium.

Polarization Mechanisms: Spatial Cues from Cell Adhesion

It is now understood that not only epithelial cells but, indeed, all cell types are capable of polarizing in response to signals from the environment.^{3,4,154,157,179,180}

Migrating cells of all types, for example, are polarized in the direction of migration in response to chemotactic or haptotactic gradients and even dividing cells can polarize through unequal division of their cytoplasm upon cytokinesis.^{157,181} Epithelial cells are unique, in that their polar organization is stable over time and the apical–basal axis of polarity exhibited by each cell in the epithelium is parallel to the axes of its neighbors. These features permit epithelial cells to form an asymmetrically organized, semipermeable surface that defines the borders of tissues in complex organisms, and separates the inside of the body from the outside environment, while helping to create and maintain distinctly different milieus on each side.¹⁸² The mechanism of epithelial cell polarization depends on specific spatial cues that cause the assembly and asymmetric reorganization of the intrinsic polarization machinery. The spatial cues are adhesive interactions between neighboring cells and the extracellular matrix, while the intrinsic machinery consists of primarily three polarity complexes called Par, Scribble, and Crumbs.^{157,182} If the pattern of cell adhesion is asymmetric, then the response of the cell is asymmetric, and a polar phenotype results (Figure 1.6). This section will describe the specific nature of the cell–cell and cell–extracellular matrix adhesive interactions. The mechanisms by which adhesion is translated by the intrinsic polarization machinery into a polarized epithelial cell with distinct apical and basolateral plasma membrane domains will be presented in subsequent sections.

As mentioned previously, polarization of kidney epithelial cells occurs during initial differentiation of the primordial tubular epithelium from condensed mesenchyme, and after disruption of an existing mature epithelium following injury. These two situations are somewhat mimicked *in vitro* by, respectively, 3D culture and 2D culture of renal epithelial cell lines. It is important to recognize that the pattern of spatial cues provided by adhesive interactions is different in these two situations. In the developing kidney epithelium, cell–cell interactions in the condensed

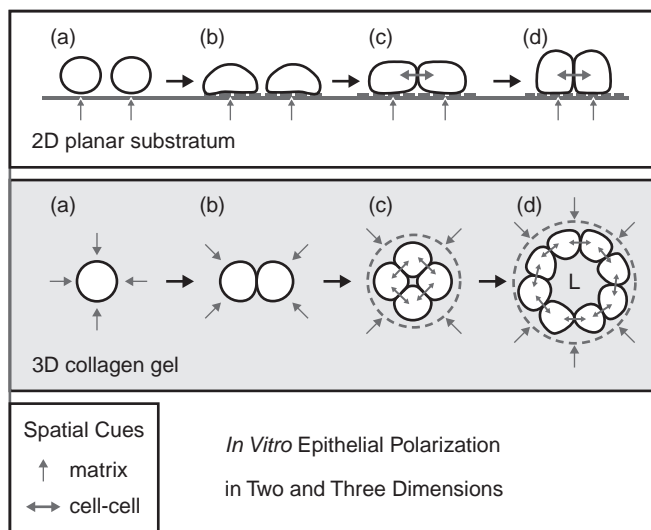


FIGURE 1.6 Geometry of spatial cues in two-dimensional and three-dimensional culture of epithelial cells. In two-dimensional culture (top) an asymmetric spatial cue is given by substratum adhesion as soon as contact occurs between the cell and the culture surface. A second spatial cue orthogonal to the first occurs when cell–cell contacts are initiated. In three-dimensional culture (bottom), the initial spatial cue impinging on single cells suspended in the collagen gel is isotropic. As soon as cell division takes place, an asymmetry is set up in which both the spatial cue from the collagen (and other secreted extracellular matrix proteins) and from cell–cell adhesion are asymmetric. The combination of asymmetric cues is required for full apical–basal polarization of epithelial cells.

mesenchyme are believed to precede meaningful cell matrix interactions¹⁵⁴ (Figure 1.7). These condensates are spatially differentiated: cells at the peripheries of the condensates have both a “free” plasma membrane domain facing the outside of the condensates and the undifferentiated mesenchyme, and an “attached” plasma membrane domain in contact with other cells of the condensate. Following this rudimentary polarization, the adherent mesenchymal cells in the condensate become more polarized, eventually forming a lumen and reorganizing into a simple epithelium attached to a basement membrane.^{154,183} Similarly, in 3D collagen gel cultures of MDCK cells, individual cells are initially suspended in the gel. Spatial cues from collagen adhesion at this point are isotropic rather than asymmetric, in that any signals impinging on the cell are unbiased with regard to direction (Figure 1.6). As soon as that cell divides, an asymmetric spatial cue is elicited from the resulting cell–cell adhesion, because the cells remain attached. This situation persists through subsequent divisions until at some point a basement membrane is formed, and the individual cells create a lumen.¹⁷⁸ In contrast, in a wounded epithelium and in 2D culture of epithelial cell lines, the persistent spatial cue from the extracellular matrix substratum is asymmetric, and then an

additional although qualitatively different asymmetric spatial cue develops as cell–cell adhesion is restored^{139,157} (Figure 1.6). The take-home message from this discussion is that epithelial cells utilize both cell–cell and cell–extracellular matrix interactions as asymmetric spatial cues to polarize. The order in which these cues are provided to the cell may yield qualitatively different results but, in the end, both are required for full apical–basal polarization.

The hierarchical relationship between cell–cell and cell–substratum interactions in epithelial cell polarization is illustrated best by a description of early experiments utilizing the MDCK cell line. MDCK cells cultured in suspension as individual cells lack polarized plasma membrane domains.^{118,184} Upon attachment to a substratum in 2D culture, apical proteins are restricted to the free or apical surface, while basolateral proteins are distributed over the entire plasma membrane. This situation persists as the cell density increases and initial cell–cell contacts form until, as the cells reach confluency to form a true epithelium, basolateral proteins also become completely polarized.^{118,185}

The relative roles of cell–cell and cell–substratum interactions can also be dissected by culturing MDCK cells in medium containing reduced amounts of calcium.^{120,186,187} If cells are cultured on collagen-coated surfaces in medium with less than 5 μM calcium, they attach to the substratum but formation of cell–cell contacts mediated by the calcium-dependent adhesion protein E-cadherin is inhibited.^{120,186,187} Cells assume a rounded morphology with no appreciable lateral membrane. In this situation, an immature apical surface forms. Microvilli are decreased in number, and expression of apical proteins on the cell surface, although reduced in quantity, remains polarized to the free surface.¹⁸⁶ Basolateral proteins, in contrast, are not polarized in cells cultured in medium containing low calcium concentrations. However, when the calcium concentration is raised to normal values (1.8 mM), then cell–cell contacts rapidly form and basolateral proteins polarize.¹⁸⁶

The culturing of MDCK cells as multicellular aggregates in suspension also permits the relative effects of cell–cell and cell–substratum interactions to be independently evaluated. Under these conditions, which are different from the 3D culture described previously because the cells are surrounded only by culture medium, aggregated cells gradually form cysts with small central lumina.¹⁸⁴ In the absence of recognizable cell–substratum contact, both apical and basolateral polarization occurs, with the apical surface facing the outside of the cell aggregate. At this time, the tight junctional protein ZO-1 is found distributed over the entire lateral membrane, where cell–cell contacts occur. As the lumen forms, the cells secrete and deposit type IV collagen and laminin into the lumen.¹⁸⁴ Interaction with

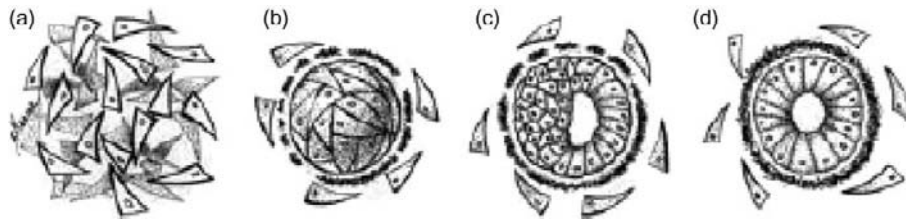


FIGURE 1.7 Development of the kidney epithelium from induced mesenchyme. The kidney epithelium develops *in vivo* following induction of the metanephric mesenchyme by the ureteric bud. The initial stages of differentiation from mesenchymal to epithelial cells may also be followed *in vitro* by organ culture. In this schematic view, induced mesenchymal cells are initially randomly oriented and show little cell–cell adhesion (a); Some mesenchymal cells adhere closely to each other and begin to produce a basement membrane at the periphery of the condensate (b); The cells of the condensate begin to reorganize into an epithelium and form a lumen as the basement membrane becomes more extensive (c); Finally, formation of the pretubular renal vesicle consisting of a polarized epithelium is complete, (d). *Redrawn with permission from ref. [154].*

this interior extracellular matrix then triggers redistribution of ZO-1 to the point of intersection between the apical and lateral membrane.¹⁸⁴ Thus, as in the reduced calcium experiments, cell–cell and cell–substratum interactions have somewhat independent but complementary effects on cell polarization.

The adherens junction provides the spatial cue from cell–cell interactions leading to polarization of epithelial cells. One of the most important components of the adherens junction is E-cadherin, the calcium-dependent homophilic cell adhesion molecule discussed previously. Suppression of E-cadherin expression by small-interfering RNAs prevents polarization, clearly implicating it in the polarization process.¹⁸⁸ However, other cell–cell adhesion proteins such as nectins and JAMs may be important as well. Nectins are transmembrane adhesion molecules containing immunoglobulin-like extracellular domains.¹⁸⁹ When epithelial cells transition from a migratory phenotype, as they exhibit during wound healing, nectins may be one of the earliest molecules in nascent cell–cell adhesions. Homophilic interaction of nectins between neighboring cells activates a variety of signaling pathways, among which are those involving the small GTPases Cdc42 and Rac1.^{189,190} This, in turn, leads to reorganization of the cortical actin cytoskeleton and, consequently, facilitates the formation and stabilization of E-cadherin-mediated contacts, creating the mature adherens junction.¹⁸⁹ During this process, both nectins and JAMs may initiate the asymmetric activation of the intrinsic polarization machinery. Nectins and JAMs bind Par3, an element of the Par polarization complex (see below).^{189,191,192} As the adherens junction matures, other polarization complexes bind and specification of the apical and basolateral plasma membrane domains occurs, with the dividing line located just at the adherens and tight junctions, collectively referred to as the apical junctional complex. At the same time, a complex of proteins known as the exocyst is also assembled at this location.^{157,191,192} The exocyst is a kind of tethering

complex designed to capture transport vesicles carrying newly synthesized membrane proteins. Delivery of these proteins to this region of the plasma membrane then facilitates the development of the apical and basolateral surfaces.^{193,194}

It is likely that the spatial cue emanating from cell–substratum adhesive interactions originates from integrin-mediated cell interactions with the basement membrane protein laminin. In the developing kidney, conversion of condensed mesenchyme into a polarized epithelium is dependent on laminin.^{154,195,196} The laminin $\alpha 1$ -subunit and integrin $\alpha 6\beta 1$, a laminin receptor, are first detected in the induced mesenchyme following condensation.^{129,154,195,196} Laminin localizes to the periphery of the condensate, suggesting that the crude polarization caused by condensation leads to polarized laminin secretion to the periphery. In organ culture antibodies against laminin $\alpha 1$ or the integrin $\alpha 6$ -subunit block formation of a polarized epithelium from condensed mesenchyme, suggesting that their involvement in epithelial differentiation is critical.^{154,196,197}

Results from a variety of other experimental systems generally support the conclusion that laminins and their integrin receptors play a role in epithelial polarization. Mutations in either integrin or laminin subunits lead to disruption of epithelial differentiation and polarization in the nematode *Caenorhabditis elegans*, and the fruit fly *Drosophila melanogaster*.¹³² Expression of laminin in the early mouse embryo generally coincides with development of epithelial tissues. In embryoid bodies derived from cultures of aggregated embryonic stem (ES) cells, an LM-111 containing basement membrane forms between the endoderm and the polarizing inner cell mass cells. When ES cells deleted of both laminin $\gamma 1$ alleles are aggregated into embryoid bodies, the inner cell mass forms, but does not polarize.¹³² Laminin has also been implicated in the polarization of MDCK cells. When MDCK cells are cultured in 3D collagen gels for 7–10 days, they form polarized cysts with the apical surface facing the

lumen, and the basal surface facing the extracellular matrix. Under these conditions, the cells secrete LM-511 and form a discrete layer closely associated with the basal surface, resembling an assembled basement membrane.^{198,199} When MDCK cells are treated either with a function-blocking anti- $\beta 1$ integrin antibody or express dominant-negative Rac1 during cyst formation, the laminin layer does not form properly, although laminin is secreted, and the cells display an inverted and somewhat disorganized polarity with apical antigens expressed on surfaces facing the extracellular matrix.^{198,199} Addition of excess exogenous LM-111 to the collagen gel partially rescues both basement membrane assembly and correct polarization in cells expressing dominant-negative Rac1, possibly by driving laminin assembly adjacent to the basal plasma membrane.^{198,199} Inverted polarization of the cyst caused by anti- $\beta 1$ integrin can also be rescued by expression of constitutively-active Rac1.^{198,199} These experiments suggest that a “serpentine” signaling pathway exists, leading from ligation of a $\beta 1$ integrin outside the cell, to Rac1 activation inside the cell, to laminin assembly outside the cell, and finally to polarization. It is important to emphasize that the perturbations that lead to inverted polarity do not seem to affect the segregation of apical and basolateral proteins in individual cells, but instead affect the orientation of apical–basal axes in the cyst. It is unclear how intracellular signaling events can cause laminin assembly. Recent findings have implicated the polarization signaling molecule Par1b and dystroglycan, a non-integrin laminin receptor, in effecting laminin assembly, but the mechanisms are not apparent.^{200,201}

Polarization Mechanisms: The Intrinsic Polarization Machinery

In epithelial cells, the intrinsic polarization machinery has traditionally been separated into three so-called polarity protein complexes that function collectively to control the formation of apical and basolateral domains of the plasma membrane.^{191,192} Many of the components of the polarity complexes were initially identified in mutant screens in *Caenorhabditis elegans* and *Drosophila melanogaster*, but homologs that function in an essentially identical manner have also been identified in mammals. The first, and perhaps most important, polarity complex generally associated with apical surface determination is the Par complex composed of Par3, Par6, atypical protein kinase C (aPKC), and the small-GTPase Cdc42 (Figure 1.8). A second apical complex is the Crumbs complex, containing in mammals the transmembrane protein Crumbs (Crb3 in the kidney) associated with Lin-7 (PALS1), and PALS1-associated tight junction protein (PATJ). The final complex, which is located on the lateral surface in polarized

epithelia, is the Scribble complex composed of Scribble (SCRIB), discs large (Dlg), and lethal giant larvae (Lgl).^{191,192} In the case of the Par and Crumbs complex, physical interactions between the components have been demonstrated, while interactions of Scribble complex components have been implied by genetic experiments. In addition to these polarity complexes, other proteins are involved in regulating apical–basal polarization in mammals or lower organisms including, in particular, Par1b and LKB1 (Par4). In the core polarity protein complexes, only aPKC and Cdc42 have enzymatic activities: the former a serine/threonine kinase; and the latter a GTPase-mediated molecular switch, while the others are largely scaffolds with a myriad of binding domains, including on many PDZ domains, that facilitate association with the apical junctional complex of the polarized cell.^{191,192}

The mechanisms by which these complexes function to help establish and maintain apical–basal polarity is often described as a process of mutual antagonism or inhibition that creates and maintains a particular balance between the amounts of distinct apical and basolateral plasma membranes, with the “front line” of this battle being the apical junctional complex^{191,192} (Figure 1.8). While the concept of mutual antagonism is not inaccurate, how this translates into intuitively comprehensible mechanisms has, until recently, not been obvious. Studies in *Drosophila* have highlighted the critical role of Par3 (Bazooka or Baz in *Drosophila*) and have, to some extent, called into question the idea of distinct, somewhat independently functioning polarization protein complexes.¹⁹¹ A compelling model proposes that initiation of polarization commences when Par3 (Baz) associates with the region of cell–cell adhesion that will become the adherens junction, prior to the concentration of DE-cadherin (the *Drosophila* version of E-cadherin) in that location. Association is facilitated by phosphoinositides. Once the adherens junction forms, then Par3 binds Par6 and aPKC, and Cdc42 is activated. Activation of aPKC then leads to phosphorylation of Par3, as well as Crb and Lgl, following the delivery of Crb to the plasma membrane through vesicles. The phosphorylation of Par3 on serine 980 by aPKC weakens the interaction between Par3 and aPKC, as well as the interaction between Par3 and the Crb complex protein PALS1 (Lin-7, Stardust or Sdt in *Drosophila*). These changes permit formation of the apical complex Crb–PALS1–PATJ, while interactions between Crb and Par6 prevent association of Par3 with the forming apical surface. At the same time, Par1-mediated phosphorylation of Par3 creates binding sites for the scaffold 14-3-3, and the subsequent Par3-14-3-3 interaction further inhibits the association of Par3 with Par6/aPKC. Since Par1 is localized to the lateral surface, this prevents Par3 from assembling on the lateral surface.

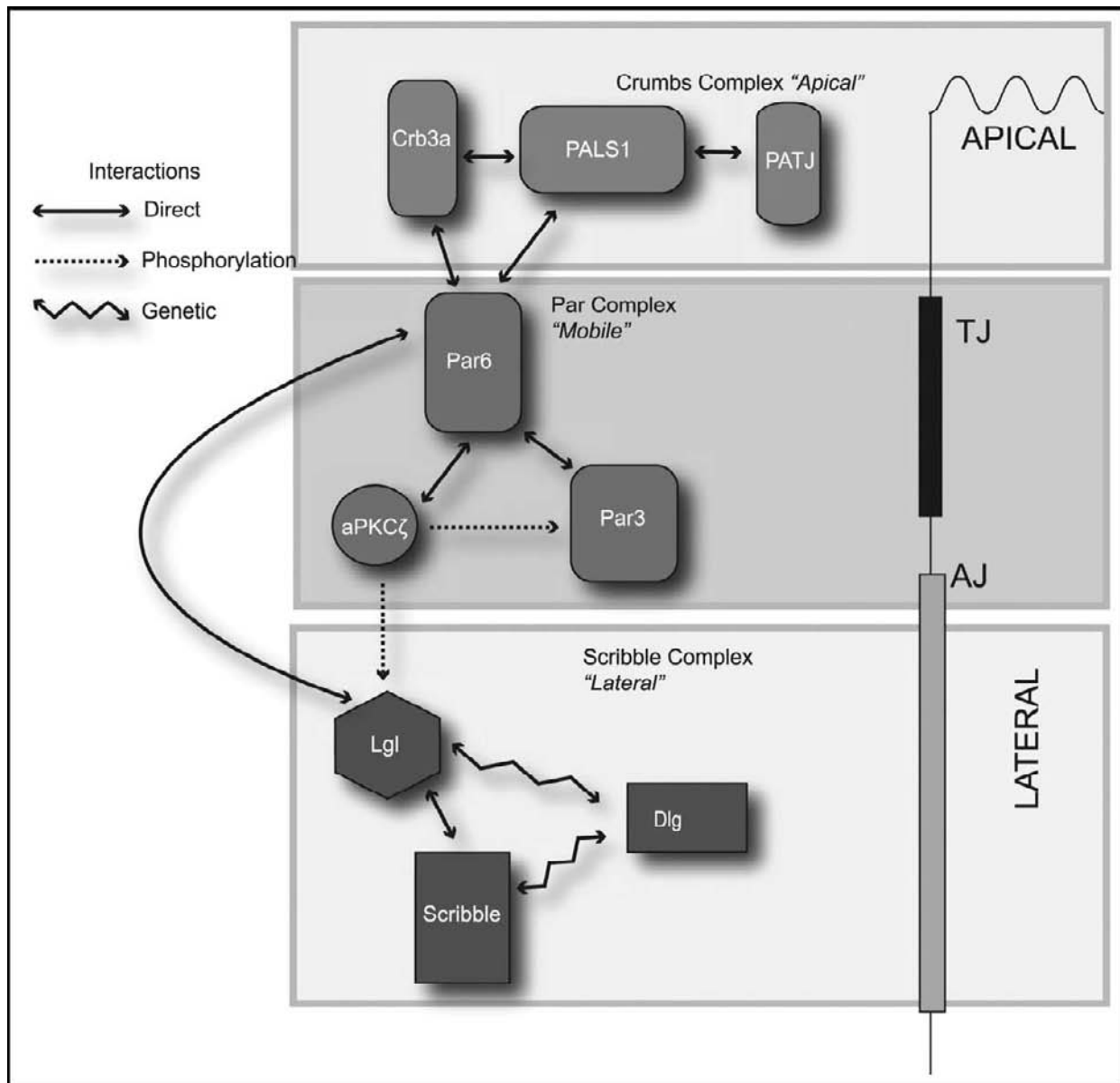


FIGURE 1.8 Distribution of polarity complexes in polarized epithelial cells. Solid lines indicate demonstrated physical interactions between components, while jagged lines indicate genetic interactions established from studies of invertebrate epithelial cells. (Reprinted with permission from Laprise, J. and Margolis, B. (2011). *AJP Renal Physiology* 300, F589–F601.)

Lgl is also phosphorylated by aPKC, which prevents its apical localization.¹⁹¹ With Dlg and Scrib, it then contributes to maintaining the identity of the lateral membrane in a manner that is poorly understood.

In all likelihood this scenario, derived primarily from experiments on *Drosophila*, is also valid in renal epithelial cells. Studies in MDCK cells, in particular, have illuminated a number of steps and, in some instances, provided additional critical details. As mentioned previously, nascent cell–cell contacts may be initiated by nectins and JAMs prior to the coalescence, stabilization, and assembly of the adherens junction

nucleated by E-cadherin and its associated proteins.^{189,191,192} Nectins and JAM, which bind Par3, may serve to localize Par3 to the forming junction. In addition to its roles in facilitating the assembly of the other polarization complexes as described earlier, Par3 binds phosphoinositides in the membrane, as well as the phosphoinositide phosphatase PTEN (phosphatase and tensin homolog).^{191,192} This phosphatase converts phosphatidylinositol (3,4,5)P₃ (PIP₃) on the inner leaflet of the membrane to phosphatidylinositol (4,5)P₂ (PIP₂). The latter lipid then facilitates the development of the apical surface by binding annexin2, which then

recruits Cdc42, leading to the cascade of events involving aPKC described earlier.²⁰² The importance of the conversion of PIP3 to PIP2 in the formation of the apical surface was highlighted dramatically when exogenous PIP2 was added to the basolateral pole of mature MDCK cell cysts in 3D culture.²⁰² Incorporation of PIP2 into the basolateral plasma membrane led to gradual extension of the apical surface to the basal pole with collapse of the lumen.

The description of the polarization process so far has focused only on events initiated by cell–cell adhesion. However, as was described in the previous section, adhesion of epithelial cells to the basement membrane is also a key part of polarization, functioning particularly to orient the apical–basal axis in a coordinated fashion in neighboring cells. How basement membrane adhesion and, particularly, adhesion to laminin does this is not clear, but it likely involves the microtubule cytoskeleton (Figure 1.2). In individual MDCK cells adherent to a substratum in 2D culture, the organization of microtubules resembles that in other nonepithelial adherent cells, in that microtubule growth is initiated from a juxtannuclear centrosome or microtubular organizing center, and extends radially towards the cell surface.^{203–205} Once cell–cell adhesion is initiated, the microtubule organizing activity begins to disperse to the cell periphery and, as the cell polarizes, it relocates diffusely to the apical surface.^{203–205} In response to this, microtubules reassemble along the apical–basal axis with the plus (growing) ends pointing basally. Networks of microtubules also form roughly parallel to the basal and apical surfaces^{203–205} (Figure 1.2). Reorganization of the microtubules depends on a family of GTPases known as septins, which provide directionality to the process,^{206,207} while stabilization and anchoring depend on the plekstrin homology-like domain family A protein LL5, microtubule plus-end tracking proteins, and the APC (adenomatous polyposis coli) tumor suppressor.^{208–211} LL5 anchors microtubule plus ends to the basal plasma membrane by associating with integrin-mediated cell adhesions to laminin.²⁰⁸ Furthermore, the polarity protein Par1b, which has been implicated in assembly of the laminin network in the basement membrane, is also important in the formation of the apical surface in 3D cysts, reportedly through a mechanism that depends on signaling from the extracellular matrix.²¹² Thus, there appears to be a signaling network linking laminin assembly and microtubule reorganization to formation of the apical surface in the correct location. How these microtubules mechanistically contribute to polarization is not clear, but it is known that they provide tracks for vesicle transport that are necessary for formation of the apical lumen through its population with specific proteins, a process facilitated by septins.^{121,122,125}

Ultimately, cooperation of extrinsic spatial cues and the intrinsic polarization machinery creates a polarized cellular infrastructure composed of adhesive interactions, a spatially-differentiated cytoskeleton, and asymmetrically disposed signaling complexes. Completion of polarization, and its maintenance during cell and tissue function, then depends on the targeting of specific membrane proteins to the apical and basolateral plasma membrane domains. How this is accomplished is the subject of the following section.

Sorting Pathways

One of the first, and perhaps most easily addressed, questions presented by the phenomenon of epithelial polarity relates to where, within the cell, sorting occurs. The membrane proteins that populate the apical and basolateral plasmalemmal domains are all synthesized in association with the membranous elements of the rough endoplasmic reticulum (RER).²¹³ It has further been shown that after their co-translational insertion into the membranes of the RER, apically- and basolaterally-directed proteins share the same cisternae of the Golgi complex as they transit the secretory pathway en route to their respective sites of ultimate functional residence.^{214,215} Immunoelectron microscopic studies performed on MDCK cells doubly infected with the VSV and influenza viruses revealed, through double labeling, that the influenza HA protein and the VSV G protein could be co-localized throughout the cisternae of the Golgi complex.²¹⁵

This observation was confirmed and extended through a series of elegant biochemical studies. It had previously been shown that when cells are incubated at 20°C newly synthesized membrane proteins accumulate in the trans-most cisterna of the Golgi complex.^{216,217} Elevating the temperature to 37°C relieves this block, and allows the proteins to proceed to the cell surface.²¹⁸ By examining the nature of the complex N-linked glycosylation associated with the VSV G protein, it was demonstrated that sialic acid residues are added in the 20°C compartment.²¹⁴ These investigators took advantage of the fact that in addition to the HA protein the membrane of the influenza virus contains a neuraminidase in their efforts to determine whether segregation of the apically directed influenza proteins from the basolaterally targeted VSV G protein occurs before or after the 20°C block compartment. They found that in singly infected cells incubated at 20°C, the VSV G protein became heavily sialylated. In contrast to this, when cells which had been doubly infected with both the VSV and influenza viruses were incubated at 20°C, little if any sialic acid could be detected on the newly synthesized VSV G protein.

These results demonstrate that as late as the 20°C block compartment, which corresponds to the trans-most cisterna of the Golgi complex, the newly synthesized apical neuraminidase and basolateral VSV G protein are still intermingled and capable of physical interaction. The segregation of these two classes of proteins from one another must, therefore, occur at or after this subcellular locus. It is interesting to note that immunoelectron microscopic studies of endocrine cells reveal that proteins destined for packaging in secretory granules are separated from those bound for constitutive delivery to the cell surface in the trans-most cisterna of the Golgi complex.^{219–221} Observations such as these have prompted investigators to speculate that this compartment, which is referred to as the Trans Golgi Network (TGN), might be the site of several intracellular sorting events.²²² More recently, it has been shown that sorting may occur as well at the level of the recycling endosome. Loading endosomes with HRP-conjugated transferrin, and subsequently disrupting endosome function through the deposition of peroxidase reaction product, prevents the surface delivery of a subset of newly synthesized basolateral membrane proteins.²²³ While the delivery of the VSV G protein to basolateral plasma membrane is prevented by this ablation of the recycling endosome, the delivery of the newly synthesized Na⁺/K⁺-ATPase to the basolateral surface is unaffected by this maneuver.²²⁴ Thus, it would appear that proteins can pursue more than one route from the TGN to the basolateral membrane domain.

Three epithelial sorting pathways can be imagined (Figure 1.9).^{1,2,158} In the direct model, sorting would take place prior to cell surface delivery. Segregation of basolateral from apical proteins would be completed intracellularly, and proteins would never appear, even transiently, in the inappropriate membrane domain. The random sorting scheme dictates that no separation of apical from basolateral proteins occurs prior to arrival at the cell surface. Following their insertion into the plasmalemma, proteins that find themselves in the wrong surface domain would be removed by endocytosis, and either transcytosed to the proper surface²²⁵ or degraded. Finally, the indirect paradigm predicts that all newly synthesized plasmalemmal proteins initially appear together, either at the apical or basolateral membrane. The proteins for which this delivery is correct would be retained in that membrane domain, while those which had been mis-delivered would be internalized and transcytosed to their sites of ultimate functional residence.

These three models, although perhaps somewhat simplistic, are valuable for the relative ease with which they can be experimentally distinguished. Over the past two decades a great deal of effort has been invested in identifying which of these routes is, in fact,

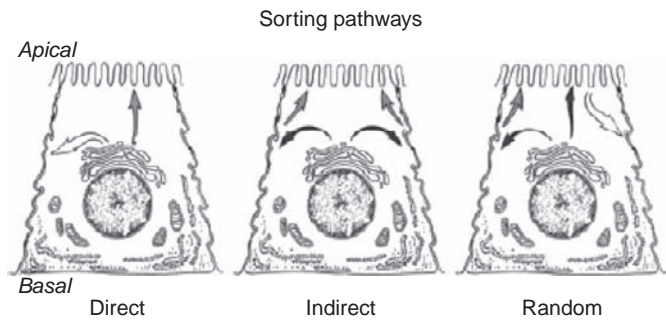


FIGURE 1.9 Three potential pathways for the sorting of membrane proteins in polarized epithelial cells. In the vectorial sorting scheme, apical and basolateral membrane proteins are separated from one another intracellularly and prior to plasmalemmal delivery (left). The indirect, or obligate, misdelivery model predicts that all newly synthesized plasma membrane proteins are carried together to a common cell surface domain. Proteins destined for the opposite surface are then internalized and transported to their appropriate destinations (middle). Finally, random sorting is defined by a complete lack of intracellular segregation. Apical and basolateral proteins are delivered without preference to both surfaces, and are subsequently redistributed by endocytosis and transcellular transport (right). Clear arrows represent vesicles carrying only basolateral proteins; hatched arrows denote vesicles carrying only apical proteins; and black arrows indicate vesicles carrying intermixed apical and basolateral membrane proteins. Reprinted with permission from ref. [1].

operational. The rather surprising answer appears to indicate that the sorting pathway pursued varies among different cell types, and even among different proteins within the same cell type.

Technical Approaches

Much of the early research into the nature of epithelial sorting pathways was carried out on MDCK cells that had been infected with the VSV or influenza viruses. The infected cells produced massive quantities of viral proteins, and retained their polarized distribution throughout at least the initial stages of the infection. These properties greatly facilitated the detection of cohorts of newly synthesized membrane proteins in the pulse chase protocols generally employed to monitor the polarity of cell surface delivery. Pulse labeling experiments demonstrated that the VSV G protein was not accessible to apically added antibodies at any point during its post-synthetic processing.²²⁶ In the case of the influenza HA protein, the converse was true. Proteases¹⁷⁴ or antibody probes²²⁷ added to the media compartment bathing the basolateral surfaces of MDCK cells grown on filters could not cleave or interact with this polypeptide during its journey to the apical cell surface. From these results, it was concluded that the direct model of sorting applied for at least these two proteins in MDCK cells.

Other labeling tools have also been brought to bear on the study of sorting pathways. The N-hydroxysuccinimidyl (NHS) derivative of biotin is a membrane impermeant molecule that will covalently combine with the ϵ -amino groups of exposed lysine residues.²²⁸ Proteins thus modified are substrates for precipitation or detection with avidin-conjugated secondary reagents. These tools can be used to follow the fate of large numbers of membrane proteins that have been exposed at one or other cell surface to the NHS biotin compound. Using such a protocol, it has been demonstrated that several MDCK cell apical and basolateral membrane proteins are directly targeted to their appropriate membrane domains.^{229,230}

Advances in the development of genetically encodable probes have also permitted sorting pathways to be visualized directly. By creating chimeras that incorporate photoactivatable versions of the green fluorescent protein (GFP), the trafficking of newly synthesized proteins of interest can be observed in intact cells in real-time.²³¹ Alternatively, the SNAP tag similarly permits newly synthesized cohorts of proteins to be observed in pulse chase protocols. The 20 kDa SNAP-Tag is a modified version of the DNA repair protein O^6 -alkylguanine-DNA alkyltransferase, which cleaves para-substituted benzyl guanines (BGs) by covalently transferring the substituted benzyl group to its active thiol.²³² The resulting thioether bond irreversibly prevents the reacted SNAP-Tag from participating in any further labeling reactions. Fluorescent BG derivatives allow for the labeling and detection of SNAP-Tagged fusion proteins in either live or fixed cells.^{232,233} Through the combination of a "pre-pulse" blocking step with non-fluorescent BG, followed by selective labeling of newly synthesized protein with fluorescent BG, it is possible to follow a cohort of protein as it is synthesized and trafficked.²²⁴

Sodium Pump Targeting

Further support for the direct pathway paradigm in MDCK cells came from studies on the sorting of the endogenous Na^+/K^+ -ATPase.¹⁷⁵ Filter grown MDCK cells which had been pulse-labeled with [^{35}S]-methionine were exposed to the N-azidobenzoyl (NAB) derivative of ouabain at either their apical or basolateral surfaces during the course of a 90 minute chase. NAB-ouabain will bind to catalytically active sodium pumps with high affinity and, following UV photolysis, will become covalently incorporated into the protein backbone of the Na^+/K^+ -ATPase α -subunit.²³⁴⁻²³⁶ By analyzing immunoprecipitates prepared from these cells using an anti-ouabain antibody, it was possible to demonstrate that no sodium pump in a state competent to bind ouabain ever appears at the apical surface. Subsequent studies using a SNAP-tagged version of the Na^+/K^+ -ATPase expressed in the same MDCK

cell line recapitulated the finding that the newly synthesized pump trafficks directly to the basolateral surface in these cells.²²⁴

Another investigation of sodium pump sorting in a different clonal line of MDCK cells made use of the NHS biotin surface-labeling technique, and arrived at a conclusion diametrically opposed to the one described above. The results of this study indicated that the Na^+/K^+ -ATPase is randomly delivered to the apical and basolateral plasmalemmal surfaces.²³⁷ The authors further suggested that stabilizing interactions with cytoskeletal elements which underly the basolateral, but not the apical, cell surface^{112,114,119} result in a much longer residence time for pump inserted into the basolateral domain. These studies are thus consistent with a model in which sodium pump is not sorted intracellularly, but instead achieves its basolateral distribution through a mechanism based on random delivery followed by differential stabilization.

The apparent discrepancy among these studies appears to be attributable to differences in the pathways and processes through which these closely related cell lines achieve the polarized distribution of the Na^+/K^+ -ATPase. While one line targets the pump directly to its basolateral destination, the other delivers it randomly and depends upon cytoskeletal interactions to stabilize only the basolateral pool.^{238,239} Clearly, therefore, while cytoskeletal interactions may be sufficient to localize the Na^+/K^+ -ATPase to the basolateral surface, they are not the sole mechanism involved in producing the sodium pump's anisotropic distribution. Instead, they may act as a failsafe mechanism to back up and reinforce the initial biosynthetic sorting of the Na^+/K^+ -ATPase, to ensure that its polarized distribution is attained and maintained.

The preceding discussion suggests that the direct scheme cannot be applied to all epithelia or even to all MDCK cell clones. An alternative system has been shown to apply to the liver, for example. Cell fractionation studies performed on liver by Bartles et al. reveal that several apical membrane proteins appear in the fraction corresponding to the hepatocyte basolateral plasma membrane prior to being delivered to the apical surface.²⁴⁰ This route has been especially well-documented for the polymeric immunoglobulin receptor (pIgR) expressed by hepatocytes. This 120 kDa polypeptide serves to carry dimeric IgA from the blood to the lumina of the bile canaliculi. During its biosynthesis, the pIgR is transported directly from the TGN to the basolateral cell surface where it is available to bind dimeric IgA.^{241,242} Independent of any interaction with IgA the receptor becomes phosphorylated in the basolateral plasmalemma, and the phosphorylated form is internalized and carried by a transcytotic vesicle to the apical, or canalicular, surface.²⁴³ Following its insertion

into the apical plasma membrane the ectodomain of the pIgR is cleaved and released into the bile as an 80 kDa protein referred to as secretory component.^{241,242} Association with secretory component helps to protect the bound IgA from intestinal proteases. Coupled with other results,²⁴⁰ the behavior of pIgR in hepatocytes supports the contention that apical membrane proteins arrive at their site of ultimate functional residence via obligate mis-delivery to the basolateral domain. This paradigm may not apply to all apical proteins in hepatocytes. Studies of the trafficking of apical members of the multidrug resistance (MDR) family of transport proteins indicate that these polytopic membrane proteins do not make an appearance at the basolateral surface en route to the apical membrane.^{244,245} Thus, within a single polarized cell type multiple trafficking routes can be employed to target different proteins to the same place.

A combination of the direct and indirect paradigms seems to be involved in membrane protein delivery in cultured intestinal cells. The Caco-2 line of human colon carcinoma cells can be grown on filters and subjected to the NHS-biotin labeling protocol described above. Such experiments reveal that the basolateral protein followed is vectorially targeted.²⁴⁶ Analysis of the apical polypeptides produced a somewhat more complicated picture. A fraction of these proteins appeared to transit through the basolateral plasmalemma prior to their apical delivery. The remainder of the apical proteins studied in this sampling were sorted intracellularly and inserted directly at the apical domain. Related and somewhat more complicated results have been gathered from studies on the biogenesis of brush border hydrolases by colonocytes *in situ*.^{110,247,248}

To complete this already confusing picture it is necessary to return to a discussion of targeting studies in MDCK cells. A cDNA encoding the pIgR has been expressed by transfection in this cell line. Remarkably, the sorting pathway pursued by this protein in the cultured renal epithelium is apparently identical to the rather baroque scheme that characterizes its route in hepatocytes.²⁴⁹ From the TGN, the pIgR travels to the basolateral surface from which it is internalized and subsequently transcytosed to the apical pole or recycled to the basolateral side. These observations demonstrate that an obligate mis-delivery pathway is either created or simply revealed in MDCK cells expressing the pIgR. Results from studies employing real-time imaging to follow the surface delivery of a class of newly synthesized apical proteins support the possibility that this indirect pathway does, in fact, exist constitutively in MDCK cells. As discussed in greater detail in the section on sorting signals, proteins whose attachments to the membrane are mediated by covalent linkage to glycosylphosphatidylinositol (GPI)

lipids tend to accumulate in the apical domains of most varieties of polarized epithelial cells. A study that employed live cell imaging to track the sorting of GPI-linked proteins found that these proteins were delivered to the basolateral surface, after which they were endocytosed and carried to the apical plasmalemma.²⁵⁰ It is worth noting, however, that subsequent studies found that several GPI-linked proteins were delivered directly to the apical membrane in MDCK cells, without making any detectable transient appearance at the basolateral surface.²⁵¹

This apparent diversity of sorting pathways is perhaps not as surprising as it first appears. The relative flow of membranous vesicles from the Golgi complex to the two plasmalemmal surfaces in different epithelial cell types is likely to reflect a cell's biologic mission, as well as the nature of the environment in which it functions. It appears, for example, that although hepatocytes produce copious quantities of secretory proteins, none are released directly into the bile.²⁵² It has been proposed that newly synthesized membrane proteins depart the Golgi in the same transport vesicles that carry proteins destined for constitutive secretion.^{158,252} Were this the case, then cells which do not produce a secretory content targeted for one or another membrane domain may also lack a direct traffic of membrane vesicles directed from the Golgi to that domain. The full complement of plasmalemmal proteins might thus be forced by default to share the same carrier out of the Golgi, and to be sorted by transcytosis subsequent to cell surface delivery. Some hepatic apical membrane proteins may transit through the basolateral surface, because there is very little non-stop cargo traveling from the TGN to the apical domain in this particular cell type. The apparent multiplicity of sorting pathways available to different proteins within the same cell type may reflect specializations relevant to these proteins' functions. Diversity may also arise from the nature of the signals and mechanisms that mediate these proteins' polarized distribution. The potential contribution of this latter influence will be referred to again in sections to follow. The lack of a single answer or unifying solution to the problem of sorting pathways is a theme that carries through the entire study of epithelial polarity. A number of equally effective mechanisms appear to have evolved for segregating membrane proteins into distinct domains. It remains to be determined how these differing approaches benefit their respective tissues and contribute to the maintenance of their unique functions.

Regulation of Renal Transport Protein Function by Endocytosis and Recycling

The delivery of a protein to its site of functional residence in a domain of the plasma membrane does not

end that protein's involvement with the cellular sorting machinery. Cell surface proteins are subject to endocytic internalization, after which their fate is determined through processes that are mechanistically closely related to those that mediate biosynthetic sorting. Following their delivery to endosomes, endocytically internalized proteins can be recycled, meaning that they are returned to the same domain of the plasma membrane. Alternatively, they can be carried by transcytosis to the opposite plasma membrane domain. Finally, they can be targeted for degradation in the lysosome. The cellular machinery and molecular signals that govern these post-endocytic sorting processes appear to closely resemble those that mediate biosynthetic sorting.

From the perspective of the renal tubular epithelial cell, perhaps the most important implication of post-endocytic sorting relates to its role in the regulation of ion transport protein activity. The activities of a number of critically important transport proteins are controlled by regulated membrane insertion and endocytotic events.²⁵³ Included on this list are the aquaporin 2 water channel (AQP2),²⁵⁴ the ROMK potassium channel,²⁵⁵ and the ENaC sodium channel of collecting duct principal cells²⁵⁶; the V-type proton ATPase of collecting duct intercalated cells²⁵⁷; the Na,Cl co-transporter (NCC) of the distal convoluted tubule²⁵⁸; the Na phosphate co-transporter (NaPi),¹⁰⁰ the Na proton exchanger (NHE3),²⁵⁹ and the Na⁺/K⁺-ATPase of the proximal convoluted tubule.²⁶⁰ These regulated trafficking events are precipitated by a variety of hormonal and physical stimuli, and involve the participation of a diverse collection of signaling cascades and trafficking proteins. While their details will be explored in far greater individual detail in the chapters that relate to each of the specific tubule segments and relevant transport systems, it is worth noting that these regulated trafficking processes exploit many of the biosynthetic sorting signals and components of the cellular trafficking machinery that are discussed in the following sections.

Sorting Signals

Rodriguez-Boulan and Sabatini's 1978 observation that viral spike glycoproteins are targeted to opposite domains of polarized epithelial cells^{165,166} gave rise to the hypothesis that sorting signals – that is, the information required to direct a protein or proteins to a given subcellular location – might be wholly contained within the structure of the sorted proteins themselves. Evidence in favor of this contention has come from studies examining the distribution of viral membrane proteins expressed by transfection (rather than infection) in polarized cultured cells. A number of investigators have shown that the influenza HA protein, the VSV G protein, and related viral spike

glycoproteins are sorted correctly in the absence of any other proteins encoded by viral genomes.^{261–264} It is apparent, therefore, that all of the addressing information necessary to produce the polarized distributions of these polypeptides must be embodied within the proteins themselves. It has further been shown that this information is almost certainly associated with the protein backbone, rather than with any post-translational modification. Cells whose capacity to add asparagine-linked sugar residues has been impaired, either through mutation or via treatment with tunicamycin,^{265,266} are nonetheless able to correctly target the viral spike proteins. Observations such as these have sparked an intensive search for the actual molecular information that specifies localization, and for the machinery that acts upon this information. It must be stated at the outset, however, that despite the rather confident and declarative tone of this section's heading the identification and characterization of epithelial sorting signals and mechanisms is far from complete.

Several distinct classes of signals have been found to specify basolateral sorting.²⁶⁷ Perhaps the best characterized of these are short motifs that contain tyrosine residues and resemble or overlap with sequences involved in endocytosis. Work from a number of groups has suggested that sequences in the cytosolic tail of membrane proteins determine the rates at which these proteins are internalized. The presence of a tyrosine residue appears to be a critical determinant of the efficacy of an endocytosis signal.²⁶⁸ The rapid endocytosis of both the LDL receptor and the transferrin receptor, for example, is dependent upon the presence of short, tyrosine-containing sequences in these proteins' cytoplasmic tails. Mutation of this tyrosine residue to any other amino acid vastly reduces the rates at which both of these proteins are internalized. The apically sorted influenza HA protein is normally endocytosed extremely slowly. Addition of a tyrosine residue to the cytosolic tail of the influenza HA protein causes it to behave like the LDL receptor or transferrin receptor with respect to endocytosis – that is, it is rapidly internalized and recycled.²⁶⁹ When this altered form of the HA protein is expressed in MDCK cells it is detected predominantly at the basolateral plasma membrane.²⁷⁰ It would appear, therefore, that a signal that is permissive for endocytosis is also competent to mediate basolateral accumulation.

Studies of the VSV G protein reveal that its basolateral sorting is also driven by a tyrosine-containing motif.^{271,272} Uptake measurements suggest, however, that the VSV G protein is internalized relatively slowly, suggesting that its tyrosine-based motif confers basolateral targeting, but not rapid endocytosis. Mutagenesis studies of the tyrosine-modified influenza HA protein, as well as several other basolateral

membrane proteins, indicate that while internalization signals and basolateral sorting signals can share the same critical tyrosine residues, they are not identical.²⁷³ Altering residues near the tyrosine can produce apically sorted influenza HA protein that is rapidly endocytosed, and basolateral HA protein that is internalized only slowly. Thus, basolateral and endocytosis signals can overlap, sharing one or more residues, but are clearly distinguishable from one another. Presumably, therefore, they must be interpreted by non-identical cellular machinery.

Data pointing to a similar conclusion have been gathered for Fc receptors.²⁷⁴ One of the Fc receptor isoforms includes a di-leucine sequence in its cytoplasmic tail. This sequence has been shown to function as an endocytosis signal, and it also appears to confer basolateral targeting when the protein is expressed in polarized cells. Once again, alteration of residues flanking the di-leucine motif demonstrates that the sequence requirements for basolateral sorting are distinct from those that specify internalization.^{275,276}

Tyrosine-containing basolateral sorting signals that are entirely distinct from recognizable endocytosis motifs have also been detected. The LDL receptor depends upon a basolateral sorting signal that bears no sequence resemblance to any known internalization motif.^{276,277} Although this motif includes a tyrosine residue, mutation of that tyrosine to phenylalanine still permits basolateral localization. A distinct tyrosine-containing motif appears to mediate the internalization of the LDL receptor.²⁷⁸ In the absence of the primary basolateral signal, this endocytosis motif can mediate a basolateral sorting function. Once again, however, with the exception of the tyrosine residue, the amino acids that contribute to the basolateral and endocytic aspects of this signal are distinct from one another.

Several basolateral sorting signals unrelated to tyrosine residues have also been reported. The well-characterized tyrosine-based endocytosis motif of the transferrin receptor is completely distinct from this protein's basolateral targeting signal, which resides in a different portion of the cytoplasmic tail. The peptide processing enzyme furin cycles between the trans-Golgi network and the basolateral plasmalemma. Its trafficking to the basolateral surface appears to be driven by residues that are associated with a casein kinase II phosphorylation site.^{279,280} The invariant chain of the major histocompatibility class II complex is sorted to the basolateral membrane by virtue of the dihydrophobic sequence Met–Leu.²⁸¹ Once again, endocytic internalization of this molecule is conferred by a similar dihydrophobic sequence, Leu–Ile, which is present at another position on the cytoplasmic tail. All of the basolateral sorting motifs discussed thus far function in the context of membrane proteins that span

the bilayer once. As will be discussed below, a distinct cadre of molecular sequences appears to mediate the targeting of many ion transporters and other multi-spanning membrane proteins.

The list of identified basolateral sorting signals is considerably more extensive than the inventory of characterized apical membrane protein sorting signals. Perhaps the best studied member of this latter roster is not, in fact, a protein-based signal at all, but is instead constituted entirely of phospholipid. Glycophospholipid (or GPI)-linked proteins are synthesized as transmembrane polypeptides that are co-translationally inserted into the membrane of the RER.²⁸² While still associated with the ER, the GPI-linked protein's ectodomain is proteolytically removed and transferred to a preassembled structure composed of a complex glycan tethered to the membrane through its attachment to a molecule of phospholipid (frequently phosphatidylinositol). Previous work has shown that in polarized epithelial cells, most of the GPI-linked proteins reside in the apical plasmalemma.^{230,283} Interestingly, the apical surface also plays host to most of the cell's complement of glycolipid.²⁸⁴ Investigators prepared a construct in which the VSV G ectodomain was wedged to the transmembrane tail of Thy-1, which carries a signal for glycophospholipidation.²⁸⁵ The resultant GPI-linked G protein is sorted to the apical membrane. The results of these and related experiments have generally been interpreted to indicate that a strong apical sorting signal is embodied in some component of the GPI linkage itself. The transmembrane domains of several single-spanning apical membrane proteins appear to carry information important for apical targeting. The transmembrane domains of the influenza virus neuraminidase and HA proteins, for example, are sufficient to mediate sorting to the apical surface when they are included in constructs expressed by transfection in MDCK cells.²⁸⁶ As will be discussed below, the same mechanisms that are thought to be involved in recognizing the GPI tail as an apical sorting motif may also interpret signals embedded in transmembrane domains. Furthermore, transmembrane domain sorting signals may be important not only in the localization of single spanning membrane proteins, but may also determine the distributions of polytopic ion pumps such as the Na⁺/K⁺- and H⁺/K⁺-ATPases (see below). It should also be noted that the extracytoplasmic or ecto domains of several apical proteins appear to incorporate directional signals. Roth et al. have shown that the ectodomain of the influenza HA protein is sufficient to specify apical targeting.²⁸⁷ When a cDNA construct encoding an anchor-minus form of the HA protein, which lacks both the cytosolic and transmembrane segments, is expressed in polarized cells it is secreted exclusively into the apical medium compartment. This is also true well for the polymeric immunoglobulin receptor.²⁸⁸ These results suggest

that a signal involved in apical sorting resides in the luminal portion of the HA molecule, and that this signal remains interpretable when it is presented as a soluble protein or in association with portions of a basolateral membrane polypeptide. Finally, N-linked sugar groups, which are also present on the extracytoplasmic domains of membrane proteins, can in some circumstances contribute apical sorting information.²⁸⁹ It is logical to conclude from this discussion that machinery necessary to read and interpret this putative ectodomain apical sorting information must be exposed at the luminal surface of the organellar compartments involved in the segregation and targeting of newly synthesized membrane proteins.

As discussed above in the section on sorting pathways, not all of the plasma membrane proteins expressed by polarized epithelial cells pursue a direct course to their sites of ultimate functional residence. The polymeric immunoglobulin receptor (pIgR) for example, when examined in its native liver^{241,242,290} or in transfected MDCK cells,²⁴⁹ travels first to the basolateral surface and subsequently to the apical pole. A number of studies have examined the contributions that various portions of the pIgR molecule may make to this complicated sorting behavior. Anchor-minus ectodomain constructs of the pIgR are secreted apically from transfected MDCK cells.²⁸⁸ Furthermore, deletion of the pIgR cytosolic tail results in a membrane protein that travels directly to the apical surface without ever appearing at the basolateral side.²⁹¹ These observations have led to the suggestion that the ectodomain of the pIgR receptor contains an apical sorting signal, and that this protein's cytosolic tail embodies information that is required for its initial appearance at the basolateral plasma membrane. Extensive mutational analysis reveals that a trio of amino acids in the sequence His, Arg, Val is primarily responsible for the vectorial targeting of the newly synthesized pIgR protein to the basolateral plasmalemma. This motif constitutes yet another addition to the growing collection of distinct amino acid sequences that can encode basolateral sorting.^{292,293}

During its tenure at the basolateral membrane, the pIgR's cytosolic tail becomes phosphorylated on a serine residue. The phosphorylation event occurs both in liver²⁴³ and in transfected MDCK cells.²⁹⁴ Intriguing experiments demonstrated that the addition of this phosphate group acts as a switch that allows the apical sorting signal to predominate, and results in the protein's transcytosis to the apical side. Site directed mutagenesis has been performed on the cDNA encoding the pIgR in order to convert the serine of interest into either an alanine or an aspartate residue.²⁹⁴ When expressed in MDCK cells, the wild-type, as well as the two mutant forms, are all initially targeted to the basolateral surface, and all three undergo endocytosis and

recycling at similar rates. Interestingly, however, while the wild-type receptor undergoes fairly rapid transcytosis, the alanine form remains largely associated with the basolateral plasma membrane. In contrast, the aspartate form is transcytosed at a rate that exceeds that characteristic of the non-mutant form. These observations suggest that the negative charge associated with the phosphate and aspartate residues permits or activates the incorporation of the pIgR into transcytotic vesicles, and thus initiates the protein's delivery to the apical surface. The mechanism through which this signal is detected and interpreted remains unclear.

The recognition and segregation of pIgR destined for transcytosis probably occurs in an endosome following internalization from the basolateral surface. The second sorting event involved in the targeting of the pIgR is thus almost certainly completed at a subcellular location distinct from the TGN. This behavior suggests that, once again, the sorting of apical from basolateral proteins need not occur exclusively on the exocytic pathway. The endosome or an endosome-related compartment appears competent to sense and act upon the sorting signals that are necessary for the pIgR's apical localization. It remains to be determined whether signals detected in the endosome correspond to the same ectodomain-associated information that mediates the apical secretion of an anchor-minus form of the pIgR. The segregation of this secretory form to the apical pathway almost certainly occurs during its passage through the Golgi, and is not likely to involve elements of the endocytic apparatus.

Most ion transport proteins and receptors span the membrane several times, and many are composed of multiple subunits. Their intricate structures complicate the search for sorting signals and increase the likelihood that multiple independent or hierarchical signals might be present. This is clearly the case for the gastric H,K-ATPase. Acid secretion in the stomach is mediated by the gastric H⁺/K⁺-ATPase. This dimeric ion pump is stored within an intracellular population of membranous vesicles, known as tubulovesicular elements (TVEs), in gastric parietal cells. Stimulation of acid secretion by secretagogues induces the TVEs to fuse with the parietal cell apical plasma membrane, resulting in the formation of deeply invaginated secretory canaliculi rich in H⁺/K⁺-ATPase. The cessation of acid secretion involves the retrieval of the H⁺/K⁺-ATPase from the cell surface, and the regeneration of the TVE storage compartment.²⁹⁵ Both the α - and β -subunits of the H⁺/K⁺-ATPase belong to the large P-type ATPase gene family.²⁹⁶ Their closest cousins in this collection are the corresponding α - and β -subunits of the Na⁺/K⁺-ATPase. Interestingly, while the H⁺/K⁺-ATPase functions at the apical surface of gastric parietal

epithelial cells, the Na^+/K^+ -ATPase is restricted in its distribution to the basolateral plasmalemma, in this and most other epithelial cell types.²⁹⁷ The homology relating these ATPases has permitted the creation of chimeric ion pumps, whose subunits are composed of complementary portions of the H^+/K^+ - and Na^+/K^+ -ATPase α - and β -polypeptides. By expressing these constructs in cultured polarized epithelial cells it has been possible to determine the molecular domains of the ion pump subunit proteins that are responsible for their sorting. Through this analysis it has become clear that both the α - and β -subunit polypeptides of the H^+/K^+ -ATPase contain molecular signals which can contribute to the targeting of the holo-enzyme.^{298–300} Expression of a large number of progressively more refined α -subunit chimeras reveals that an eight amino acid sequence within the α -subunit of the H^+/K^+ -ATPase is sufficient to specify apical sorting.³⁰⁰ This domain is predicted to reside within a transmembrane helix, thus suggesting that protein–lipid or protein–protein interactions within the plane of the membrane are responsible for pump sorting.

The β -subunit of the H^+/K^+ -ATPase contains a tyrosine-based sorting signal that functions to internalize the pump complex from the surface of the gastric parietal cell, and return it to an intracellular regulated storage compartment.³⁰¹ This internalization is responsible for the cessation of gastric acid secretion following the removal of secretagogue stimulation. This was demonstrated by generating a transgenic mouse which expresses an H^+/K^+ -ATPase β -subunit lacking this endocytosis signal.³⁰¹ These animals are unable to reinternalize H^+/K^+ -ATPase from the apical surfaces of their gastric parietal cells. Consequently, they produce elevated gastric acid secretion during the interdigestive period. Mice carrying the mutant β -subunit develop gastritis and gastric ulcerations, with histologic features that are essentially identical to those found in human disease. Examination of renal potassium clearance in these animals reveals that the same β -subunit sorting signal regulates active potassium resorption in the collecting tubule.³⁰²

Several studies have begun to define other signals employed in the polarized sorting of polytopic membrane proteins. Recently, for example, a novel motif has been identified in the cytoplasmic tail of the seven-membrane-span receptor rhodopsin that mediates this protein's apical sorting when it is expressed in MDCK cells.³⁰³ Another member of the seven transmembrane G protein-coupled receptor family, the P2Y2 receptor, manifests an apical sorting signal in one of its extracellular loops.³⁰⁴ Furthermore, studies of neurotransmitter re-uptake systems have demonstrated that the four members of the highly homologous GABA transporter gene family are differentially sorted in epithelial cells

and in neurons.^{305,306} The GAT-1 and GAT-3 isoforms, which are restricted to axons when expressed endogenously or by transfection in neurons, are sorted to the apical membranes of epithelial cells. The GAT-2 and betaine transporters, which are 50–67% identical to GAT-1 and GAT-3, behave as basolateral proteins in epithelia, and are restricted to dendrites when expressed in neurons. Production of chimeric and deletion constructs have permitted the identification of very short amino acid sequences at the extreme C-terminal tails of these transporters which manifest targeting information. The nature of these sequences suggests that they may interact with polypeptides containing PDZ-type protein–protein interaction domains, raising the possibility that this association may play a direct role in the sorting of ion transport proteins.³⁰⁷ A similar PDZ-dependent mechanism also appears to mediate the apical trafficking of CFTR.^{308–311} The basolateral isoform of the Na,K,2Cl co-transporter, NKCC1, has recently been shown to be targeted to the basolateral surface by virtue of a di-leucine motif in its cytoplasmic C-terminal tail. The renal isoform of this protein, NKCC2, depends for its apical localization on a two non-contiguous stretch of amino acids that appear to collaborate to form a conformation-dependent signal in the context of the fully folded transporter's C-terminal domain. The mechanism through which this non-contiguous conformational determinant is recognized by the cellular sorting machinery has yet to be determined.³¹²

Cell Type-Specific Sorting: Patterns

The message encoded within a membrane protein's sorting signal is dependent not only upon its own specific biochemical composition, but also upon the cellular context in which it is expressed. Several examples of membrane proteins that are differentially targeted in distinct epithelial cell types have been documented. The vacuolar H^+ -ATPase, for example, accumulates at the apical surfaces of α -type intercalated cells, but at the basolateral plasmalemmas of β -type intercalated cells in the renal collecting duct.³¹³ Similarly, the Na^+/K^+ -ATPase is basolateral in most epithelia, but behaves as an apical protein in cells derived from the neural crest, such as choroid plexus and retinal pigment epithelium.^{314,315} Targeting of particular proteins or classes of proteins can also vary as a function of the differentiation states of epithelial cells. For example, the sorting of well-characterized polarity markers expressed in *Drosophila* via germ line transformation was followed in the developing *Drosophila* embryo. Human placental alkaline phosphatase (PLAP) is a glycosylphosphatidyl inositol (GPI)-linked protein that accumulates at the apical membranes of mammalian epithelial cells. A chimeric construct composed of the

transmembrane and cytosolic portions of the vesicular stomatitis virus (VSV) G protein coupled to the ectodomain of PLAP has been found to behave as a basolateral protein when expressed in the MDCK cell system.²⁸⁵ The subcellular distributions of these proteins were examined in the epithelial tissues of transgenic *Drosophila* embryos which expressed these proteins under the control of a heat shock promoter.³¹⁶ In the surface ectoderm both PLAP and PLAPG were restricted to the basolateral membranes throughout development. Internal epithelia derived from the surface ectoderm accumulated PLAP at their apical surfaces, while PLAPG retained its basolateral distribution. The redistribution of PLAP from the basolateral to the apical plasma membrane was found to be coincident with the invagination of the surface epithelium to form internal structures, suggesting that the sorting pathways which function in the epithelium of the *Drosophila* embryo are developmentally regulated.

In light of both the multiplicity of sorting signals presented in the preceding section, and the apparent potential for heterogeneity in their interpretation discussed above, it is natural to wonder whether any logic or consistency governs nature's solution to the deceptively simple problem of apportioning proteins among two separate membrane domains. Upon further reflection, however, the complexity and degeneracy of the "sorting code" can be seen as a tremendous virtue. Two different epithelial cell types may need to target a given membrane protein to opposite surfaces of their respective plasma membranes in order to fulfill their unique physiologic functions. These same functions may also require, however, that other membrane proteins occupy the same surface distributions in both cellular contexts. Thus, while the sodium pump occupies the apical membranes of the cells of the choroid plexus and the basolateral membranes of renal epithelial cells, receptors for basement membrane components are present at the basolateral surfaces of both cell types. If only a single class of basolateral sorting signal and a single class of apical sorting signal existed, then it would not be possible for a cell to selectively alter the distribution of one set of plasmalemmal proteins, without simultaneously altering the distributions of the entire population of the plasma membrane. In order to target the sodium pump to the apical surface, choroid plexus epithelial cells would be forced to target basement membrane receptors there as well. This would obviously constitute a wasteful compromise. In order to endow each epithelial cell type with the capacity to select individualized complements of proteins for its apical and basolateral domains, a dizzying multitude of sorting signals has evolved. Cells can thus customize the distributions of proteins among their plasmalemmal domains, without the constraints that would

be imposed by a limited number of sorting signals. According to this interpretation, sorting signals do not specify a specific destination such as apical or basolateral. Instead, they specify classes of proteins whose members are always sorted together. The membrane domain to which any one of these classes is sorted will depend upon the cellular context in which it is expressed, and will be determined by the idiosyncratic array of sorting machinery and pathways present in each individual epithelial cell type.

Sorting: Mechanisms

Extensive progress has been made in illuminating the mechanisms through which the sorting signals discussed above exert their effects and ensure the polarized delivery of newly synthesized plasma membrane proteins. The strong evidence for the existence of sorting signals leads quite naturally to the postulate that sorting receptors must exist that are capable both of recognizing these signals, and of transducing their messages to the relevant cellular machinery. Such receptors have, in fact, been demonstrated in the case of lysosomal enzyme sorting. Targeting of a newly synthesized hydrolase to the lysosome is mediated by the interaction between the enzyme's mannose-6-phosphate (man-6-p) recognition marker, and one of two receptors which bind man-6-p bearing ligands in the Golgi and mediate their segregation to pre-lysosomal endosomes.³¹⁷ Binding of newly synthesized lysosomal enzymes to the man-6-p receptors is pH-dependent. At the relatively neutral pH of the Golgi ligands are tightly bound, whereas in the acid environment of the pre-lysosomal endosome they are rapidly released. No such well-characterized receptor systems have yet emerged to explain the sorting behavior of secretory and membrane proteins in polarized cells. While sorting receptors for secretory proteins remain to be identified definitively, some progress has been made in understanding how such receptors might function. Lysosomotropic amines, such as NH_4Cl and chloroquine, elevate the luminal pH of acidic organelles.³¹⁸ The resulting neutralization of acidic compartments can have profound effects on sorting. In the case of lysosomal enzyme targeting, addition of NH_4Cl raises the pH of the pre-lysosomal endosome, and thus prevents the acid-dependent unbinding of newly synthesized hydrolases from the man-6-p receptor.³¹⁷ In the continued presence of the drug, the Golgi becomes depleted of receptors available to complex with free ligand. Newly synthesized enzymes bearing the man-6-p recognition marker are thus secreted constitutively and by default. Experiments on cultured polarized epithelial cells suggest that a similar pH-dependent mechanism may function in the sorting of basolateral secretory proteins.¹⁷⁶

Laminin and heparan sulfate proteoglycan are constituents of epithelial basement membranes.^{130,319} Studies of MDCK cells grown on permeable filter supports revealed that both of these proteins are normally secreted predominantly into the basolateral medium compartment.¹⁷⁶ When secretion from cells treated with NH_4Cl was monitored, it was found that both proteins were released into both media compartments in roughly equal proportions. Removal of the drug reversed this effect and restored normal basolateral secretion. As mentioned above, studies have demonstrated that the secretory default pathway for MDCK cells – that is the route pursued by soluble proteins which lack any means of interacting with the cellular sorting machinery – is apical and basolateral.^{176,261,320} It appears, therefore, that targeting of these two basolateral secretory proteins requires the participation of an intracellular acidic compartment. Elevation of the luminal pH of this compartment reversibly blocks laminin and HSPG sorting, and results in their apical and basolateral default secretion.

Although the nature of the dependence of this sorting event on acidic compartments remains unknown, it is interesting to speculate that a mechanism similar to that which functions in lysosomal enzyme sorting may also be involved in routing basolateral secretory proteins. In such a model, binding or unbinding of laminin and HSPG from a sorting receptor would require the participation of an acidic organellar pH. Confirmation of this hypothesis will await the identification of such a pH-dependent binding protein with affinity for these and other basolaterally targeted proteins.³²¹ Finally, it is worth noting that the basolateral sorting of the Na^+/K^+ -ATPase, and the apical sorting of the influenza HA protein and a complex of secretory polypeptides, occurs normally in the presence and absence of NH_4Cl .^{175,176,322} It would appear, therefore, that different mechanisms are brought to bear in ushering different classes of proteins to their sites of ultimate functional residence.

Tyrosine-Based Motifs and Adaptors

Recent studies suggest that several different classes of soluble proteins may regulate the subcellular distributions of proteins bearing tyrosine-based signals. Perhaps the best understood of these are the adaptins.³²³ The adaptins comprise a group of peripheral membrane proteins that mediate the interaction between transmembrane proteins and the clathrin skeletons of coated pits and vesicles. Adaptins recognize and bind to tyrosine-containing coated pit localization sequences and link the proteins bearing these motifs to the clathrin coat.^{323–327} Adaptins can thus be considered to be among the most proximal elements of the endocytic sorting machinery – they recognize polypeptides endowed with endocytosis signals and ensure

that they are incorporated into the specified internalization pathway. Distinct classes of adaptins function in the segregation of proteins into the coated structures associated with the trans-Golgi network, and into cell surface coated pits.²³⁰ While AP2 adaptors mediate internalization of proteins from the cell surface, AP1 adaptor complexes participate in trafficking proteins out of the TGN. The μ -subunits of adaptor complexes appear to be responsible for interacting with tyrosine-based motifs.³²⁵ Two isoforms of μ -subunits are found in AP1 complexes. The $\mu 1a$ protein is ubiquitously expressed, and is found in both polarized and non-polar cell types. The $\mu 1b$ protein is instead found in only a subset of polarized cell types.³²⁸ Proteins bearing tyrosine-based motifs are basolaterally sorted in MDCK cells, but accumulate apically in LLC-PK cells.³²⁹ It was noted that MDCK cells express $\mu 1b$, whereas this protein is absent from LLC-PK cells. Remarkably, expression of $\mu 1b$ in LLC-PK cells at least partially “normalizes” their sorting properties, so that many (but not all) membrane proteins containing tyrosine-based signals are directed to the basolateral surface.³³⁰ Thus, $\mu 1b$ constitutes perhaps the best characterized component of the sorting machinery. It is clearly capable of recognizing a class of sorting signals and acting upon the instructions that they convey. Consistent with the idea that clathrin adaptors play an important role in the sorting of at least some basolateral proteins, it has been demonstrated that knockdown of clathrin expression in cultured renal epithelial cells perturbs basolateral, but not apical, protein delivery.³³¹

It is interesting to note that recent studies demonstrate that different proteins bind to and interpret the messages encoded by tyrosine-based and di-leucine endocytosis motifs. Overexpression of tyrosine-motif containing proteins can inhibit the endocytosis of other proteins carrying a similar endocytosis signal, presumably by competing for limited quantities of the adaptor proteins that cluster proteins bearing these signals into clathrin-coated pits. This intervention does not affect, however, the internalization of proteins endowed with di-leucine motifs, indicating that they must be recognized and interpreted by a different class of polypeptides.³³² It appears that the β -subunits of adaptor complexes interact with di-leucine motifs.³³³ Finally, a very different type of protein has been shown to interact with a tyrosine-based proline-rich sequence in the C-terminal tails of epithelial sodium channel (ENaC) subunits. The Nedd-4 protein possesses a ubiquitin ligase domain, and through its interaction with the ENaC tails may lead to these channels’ downregulation through degradation.³³⁴

The association of basolateral membrane proteins, such as the Na^+/K^+ -ATPase with elements of the subcortical cytoskeleton,^{112,119} has led to the speculation

that this interaction may play a role in targeting. Evidence in support of this proposition was found in the studies, described above, which suggested that, at least in one MDCK cell clone, the Na⁺/K⁺-ATPase may be delivered in equal proportions to the apical and basolateral surface.²³⁷ Apically delivered material may be rapidly degraded, whereas basolateral sodium pump would be stabilized through interaction with the cytoskeleton and consequently would turn over very slowly. The pump's polarized distribution would thus be the product of differential susceptibility to degradation, rather than sorting at the level of the Golgi. The degree to which stabilization through interaction with the cytoskeleton contributes to the polarized distribution of the sodium pump or any other proteins remains to be established.

Glycosphingolipid-Rich Membrane Domains

The observation that all of the glycolipids and GPI-linked proteins associated with epithelial cells tend to be found in the apical plasmalemmal domain led to the proposal that lipids may play a role in membrane protein sorting.³³⁵ Since glycolipids and GPI-linked proteins are only associated with the outer leaflet of the plasma membrane, these molecules will be exposed at the luminal face of the organelles of the biosynthetic pathway. Any sorting machinery that interacts with glycolipids, therefore, must do so either at the luminal surface or within the plane of the membrane itself. These constraints have suggested to some investigators the possibility that lipid–lipid interactions are sufficient to segregate apically directed glycolipids and GPI-linked proteins into distinct patches during their residence in the Golgi. These self-assembled patches could then serve as the nuclei from which apically directed vesicles would bud. The biophysical properties of these patches might be involved in ensnaring other apically directed proteins, as well as the components necessary to appropriately target the resultant transit vesicle.³³⁶ While evidence of lipid patches exists in both *in vitro* and *in vivo* systems,^{284,337} their precise role in the sorting process remains to be elucidated. Independent of its applicability, however, this model is extremely interesting. It is a useful reminder that forces other than simple receptor–ligand interactions are likely to be involved in generating and maintaining the anisotropic protein distributions that define the polarized state.

As noted above, several proteins are targeted to the apical membrane by virtue of signals embedded within their transmembrane domains. The fact that the amino acid residues of a transmembrane domain may be in direct contact with lipid molecules suggests the possibility that they may mediate apical sorting through interactions with glycosphingolipid-rich membrane domains. According to this hypothesis, the composition

of its transmembrane domain may permit a protein to partition into glycosphingolipid rich patches, and thus to become concentrated in a region of the membrane that will give rise to an apically directed transport vesicle. GPI-linked proteins which have become associated with glycosphingolipid-rich membrane domains are insoluble in 1% TritonX-100 at 4°C. When a cell lysate prepared in this fashion is fractionated on a sucrose gradient, insoluble proteins are found near the top of the gradient, whereas soluble proteins remain in the heavier fractions.³³⁷ Interestingly, the transmembrane domain of the apical protein influenza neuraminidase carries apical sorting information, and also enables the protein to incorporate into insoluble material.

PDZ Domain-containing Proteins

As discussed above, the C-terminus of GABA transporter GAT-3 appears to be important for its apical localization in MDCK cells.³⁰⁷ The final residues of this C-terminal tail, threonine, histidine, and phenylalanine (THF), are reminiscent of the sequences present at the extreme C-terminal tails of proteins known to associate with members of the membrane-associated guanylate kinase (MAGUK) family. The MAGUK proteins incorporate one or more copies of the PDZ domain, which is named for three of the proteins in which the sequence homology defining this protein–protein interaction motif were first identified; PSD-95/SAP90, Dlg, and ZO-1. Interactions between the PDZ domain of a MAGUK protein and the extreme cytoplasmic tail of an integral membrane polypeptide appear to be important in organizing the surface distributions of intrinsic membrane proteins.^{338,339}

Observations obtained from a number of experimental systems provide further evidence for the involvement of PDZ domain-containing polypeptides in epithelial membrane protein sorting.³⁴⁰ The LET-23 receptor tyrosine kinase is localized to the basolateral cell surfaces of vulvar epithelial cells in *C. elegans*. Genetic studies reveal that at least three proteins contribute to the generation or maintenance of this distribution. Mutation of the *lin2*, *lin7* or *lin10* genes leads to loss of LET-23 basolateral polarity. Each of the proteins encoded by these genes includes one or more PDZ domains. A mutation in the *Drosophila* discs lost protein, which contains multiple PDZ domains, also leads to the mis-localization of several apical and basolateral proteins in the epithelial structures of affected embryos.³⁴¹ It would appear, therefore, that PDZ domain-containing proteins may play a direct role in the polarized sorting of at least some membrane proteins or may be required for the generation or definition of polarized domains. These observations may be especially relevant to physiologic function of polarized renal epithelial cells, since a number of important ion

transport proteins, including CFTR and NHE3, appear to interact with cytoplasmic proteins containing PDZ domains.^{342–344} It seems likely that these interactions may play a role in establishing these proteins distributions, and hence in determining their capacity to participate in vectorial ion transport.

Finally, it is important to note that once proteins have been sorted into the vesicles that will carry them to the appropriate cell surface domain, these vesicles themselves need to be targeted appropriately. Presumably, the vesicular membranes include proteins that ensure that the vesicles will interact and fuse with only the proper domain of the epithelial plasmalemma. This recognition machinery is likely to include components of the membrane fusion machinery, such as vesicular SNARE (soluble NSF attachment receptor) proteins.³⁴⁵ SNARE proteins present in both vesicular and target membranes form complexes that appear to be necessary for most normal cellular fusion processes. The extent to which different members of the SNARE family impart specificity to intracellular vesicular fusion events remains to be established.^{346–348} Interestingly, however, a component of the machinery involved in vesicular targeting in yeast was identified in mammalian cells.³⁴⁹ This Sec 6/8 “exocyst” complex appears to play a role specifically in the fusion of basolaterally-directed, but not apically-directed, post-Golgi carrier vesicles in epithelial cells.³⁵⁰ It is likely that the number of “destination-specific” vesicular and plasma membrane proteins important for directing vesicular traffic in polarized cells will continue to grow.

Epithelial Cell Polarity and Renal Disease

Because kidney function is dependent on the polarity of tubular epithelial cells, any condition that compromises this polarity will lead to renal failure.^{351,352} In general, this may occur through neoplastic processes, cell injury due to ischemia or nephrotoxicity, or through inherited genetic effects.^{179,351} Each of these may affect the tubular epithelial cells, their surrounding environment including the basal lamina and interstitial compartment, or both.

Carcinogenesis

During neoplastic growth it can be appreciated on the basis of morphology alone that the changes in cell and tissue organization wrought by tumorigenesis are likely to affect cell polarity.¹⁷⁹ Model studies confirm this suspicion. When MDCK cells, which are not normally tumorigenic, are oncogenically transformed by introduction of the *v-Ki-ras* oncogene, they are converted from a simple epithelium to a multilayer, with great heterogeneity in overall cell morphology.¹⁷⁹

Ultrastructural examination of these cells suggests that apical–basal polarity is severely compromised. Microvilli are diminished from the cells at the top layer, and organization of the cytoplasm is scrambled. Golgi complexes and centrosomes, which normally reside in an apical supranuclear location, are now randomly positioned.¹⁷⁹ Despite this apparent high degree of disorganization, immunocytochemical localization of specific antigens and physiological measurements suggests that polarity is not totally disrupted. Basolateral proteins, including Na^+/K^+ -ATPase and the cell-adhesion molecule E-cadherin, are restricted to regions of cell–cell contact, as in normal polarized MDCK cells. Apical proteins, on the other hand, are randomly localized to the free surface of the multilayered epithelia, as well as to areas of cell–cell contact in cells throughout the multilayer. The tight junctional antigen ZO-1 is found typically at the point where the free and adherent surfaces of the uppermost cell layer meet, as well as at a number of sites within the multilayer.¹⁷⁹ The latter may be intercellular lumina or canaliculi connected to the upper surface. This localization probably reflects the presence of functional tight junctions, because the multilayer is both electrically tight and impermeant to inulin.

It is interesting to note that recent studies demonstrate that proteins encoded by tumor suppressor genes may function as key regulators of polarity. Mutations in the von Hippel–Lindau tumor suppressor gene can lead to renal cell carcinoma. While the primary function of the von Hippel–Lindau gene product (VHL) relates to the negative regulation of the activity of the hypoxia inducible factor (HIF) transcription factor, the VHL protein also appears to participate in the formation or stabilization of intercellular adhesive junctions.³⁵³ Mutations in the gene encoding the LKB1 protein kinase are responsible for Peutz–Jaeger syndrome, an inherited form of tumor susceptibility associated with the development of numerous hamartomas. Epithelial cells expressing LKB1 that is constitutively activated are able to form polarized domains in the absence of cell–cell and cell–substratum contact.³⁵⁴ Thus, proteins that participate in epithelial polarization may function as tumor suppressors by virtue of their capacity to control the growth and morphogenesis of the cells in which they are expressed.

Ischemic Injury

Other alterations in cell polarity may come about through the effect of renal ischemia on the tubular epithelium.^{355–358} Ischemic episodes of less than 1 hour often do not lead to tubular necrosis but may, nevertheless, cause diminished sodium and water uptake by the proximal tubule.³⁵⁹ Such brief ischemia compromises the polarity of tubular cells, resulting in

the redistribution of a fraction of the Na^+/K^+ -ATPase from the basolateral domain to the apical domain, preventing net sodium uptake by the tubule.^{359,360} At the same time, leucine aminopeptidase moves from the apical to the basolateral domain, and also becomes intracellular, presumably through endocytosis. At later times, Na^+/K^+ -ATPase and leucine aminopeptidase are randomly distributed on the plasma membrane of tubular epithelial cells, remaining attached to the basement membrane or exfoliated into the luminal space. The mechanism leading to this loss of polarity is not known. It is possible that ischemia, which is known to affect mitochondria and other organelles and to possibly alter the permeability of the plasma membrane, may result in increased cytoplasmic calcium concentrations.^{355,358} This, in turn, could disrupt elements of the cytoskeleton, perhaps affecting the maintenance of polarity. These may represent disruption or perturbation of the cortical actin cytoskeleton. In fact, *in vitro* studies with renal epithelial cell lines demonstrate that ATP depletion causes disassembly of the cytoskeleton and redistribution of actin from its normal locations in the cell cortex, terminal web, and microvilli to perinuclear cytoplasmic aggregates.^{361,362} In addition, energy depletion can lead to the endocytic internalization and proteolytic cleavage of cell adhesion molecules such as E-cadherin.^{363,364} Such alterations might affect transduction of spatial signals from the extracellular matrix to the polarization machinery along the lines previously discussed.

During reperfusion following renal ischemia, tubular epithelial cells detach from the basement membrane and accumulate in the lumen. It has been postulated that ischemia-induced depolarization of integrins from basal to apical domains of the plasma membrane contributes not only to cell detachment, but also to cell aggregation and tubular obstruction. According to this hypothesis, at early times post-ischemia, redistribution of integrins would loosen attachment of cells from the basal lamina, allowing some of them to detach.^{365–367} Released cells would then aggregate and adhere to remaining tubular epithelial cells via their integrins. These would either bind directly to each other by homotypic interactions or associate through bridging matrix molecules. Collections of such aggregates would obstruct the tubules, causing oliguria and destruction of renal tissue.^{365–367} In support of this hypothesis, integrins were observed to redistribute apically in oxidatively injured epithelial cell lines.³⁶⁵ Even more compelling was the observation that infusion of RGD peptides, which block some integrin–matrix interactions, appeared to ameliorate the effects of ischemia-induced by clamping of the renal artery.^{367,368} More recent *in vivo* findings utilizing a rat model of renal ischemia do not, however, support this hypothesis, at

least with regard to $\beta 1$ integrins.¹⁵⁶ Soon after reperfusion, $\beta 1$ integrins redistributed from a strictly basal to basolateral location in cells of the S3 segment of the proximal tubule, but did not appear on the apical plasma membrane at this time.¹⁵⁶ Surprisingly, $\beta 1$ integrins could not be detected by immunofluorescence in cells released from the basal lamina into the tubular lumen, precluding the possibility that they were mediating either cell aggregation or attachment of exfoliated cells to the residual tubular epithelium. Apical $\beta 1$ integrins only appeared at later times post-ischemia, as cells lost polarity in the process of regeneration.¹⁵⁶

Genetic Diseases of Proximal Tubule Apical Endocytosis: Dent's Disease and the Oculo Cerebral Renal Syndrome of Lowe

It is interesting to note that at least two genetic diseases with overlapping constellations of symptoms lead to perturbations of the proximal tubule's megalin-mediated scavenging activity that normally prevents the urinary loss of low molecular weight filtered proteins. Dent's disease is caused by inactivating mutations in the gene encoding the CIC5 protein, which functions as a chloride:proton exchanger in the membranes of proximal tubule epithelial cell endosomes.^{369,370} CIC5 activity leads to the accumulation of chloride ions in these endosomes, which appears to be required for steps in the internalization or recycling of the proximal tubule endocytic machinery. The Oculo Cerebral Renal Syndrome of Lowe is caused by mutations in an inositol lipid phosphatase that participates in controlling the inventory of inositol phospholipids in subcellular membranes.³⁷¹ These inositol phospholipids help to establish the compartmental identity of subcellular membranes, and to facilitate the assembly of trafficking machinery on their cytosolic surfaces. While the precise mechanisms through which intra-endosomal chloride concentrations and intramembranous inositol phospholipid levels participate in the process of megalin endocytosis remain to be elucidated, it is clear that both of these parameters collaborate in generating or maintaining the proximal tubule epithelial cell's unusual active apical endocytic machinery.

Polycystic Kidney Disease

The progressive formation of renal cysts, which characterizes autosomal dominant polycystic kidney disease (ADPKD), has also been suggested to occur as a result of polarity defects. ADPKD is the most common potentially lethal dominant genetic human disease. Approximately 85% of all cases are linked to mutations in the PKD1 gene, with another 10% linked to PKD2.^{108,372} While the specific functions of the proteins encoded by these genes are the focus of intense study, the behavior of cyst

epithelial cells *in situ* and in culture is consistent with a role for the PKD proteins in directing epithelial differentiation. Whereas renal tubular epithelial cells normally mediate fluid and electrolyte absorption, cyst epithelial cells carry out net secretion.^{373,374} It has been suggested that the proximal cause of renal cyst formation in polycystic kidney disease may be the mis-targeting of Na^+/K^+ -ATPase to the apical plasmalemma.

According to this model, the presence of sodium pump at the apical surface leads to active apical ion secretion and the accumulation of luminal cyst fluid.^{375,376} Other studies suggest that mis-localization of Na^+/K^+ -ATPase cannot be the primary driving force for cyst fluid accumulation. When examined in cyst cells in culture or *in situ*, the Na^+/K^+ -ATPase was found to be exclusively basolateral.³⁷⁷ Instead, the secretion appears to be driven by intracellular chloride accumulation via a basolateral $\text{Na}^+/\text{K}^+2\text{Cl}^-$ co-transporter and apical chloride exit through the CFTR protein.³⁷⁷ A similar mechanism is responsible for fluid secretion by the poorly differentiated epithelial cells lining the crypts of the small intestine. As these crypt cells migrate up the intestinal villus they mature functionally, metamorphosing from secretory into resorptive epithelial cells.³⁷⁸ It has been suggested that the secretory phenotype is characteristic of immature epithelial cells, while more highly developed epithelial cells acquire the capacity to absorb fluid and electrolytes.³⁷⁹ The physiologic similarities relating cyst and crypt epithelial cells has prompted the hypothesis that loss of appropriate PKD function results in the dedifferentiation of mature resorptive renal tubular epithelial cells into more primitive secretory cells. The precise mechanisms through the PKD1 and PKD2 mutations produce the dramatic pathology associated with ADPKD, and the potential role of epithelial differentiation and sorting pathways, remain to be determined.

Acknowledgments

K. S. Matlin and M. J. Caplan acknowledge support for the research in their laboratories through grants from the National Institutes of Health. They would also like to thank Aki Manninen for permitting the use of unpublished material, Jonathan Bowen and Elias T. Spoliotis for the images in Figure 1.2, and Ms. Ruth Crawford for assistance with the references.

References

- Caplan MJ, Matlin KS. Sorting of membrane and secretory proteins in polarized epithelial cells. In: Matlin KS, Valentich JD, editors. Functional epithelial cells in culture. New York: Alan R. Liss; 1989. p. 71–127.
- Matlin KS. The sorting of proteins to the plasma membrane in epithelial cells. *J Cell Biol* 1986;103:2565–8.
- Nelson WJ. Adaptation of core mechanisms to generate cell polarity. *Nature* 2003;422:766–74.
- Rodriguez-Boulan E, Nelson WJ. Morphogenesis of the polarized epithelial cell phenotype. *Science* 1989;245:718–25.
- Duffield A, Caplan MJ, Muth TR. Protein trafficking in polarized cells. *Int Rev Cell Mol Biol* 2008;270:145–79.
- Muth TR, Caplan MJ. Transport protein trafficking in polarized cells. *Annu Rev Cell Dev Biol* 2003;19:333–66.
- Koeppen BM, Giebisch G. Mineralcorticoid regulation of sodium and potassium transport by the cortical collecting duct. In: Graves JS, editor. Regulation and development of membrane transport processes. New York: John Wiley and Sons; 1985. p. 89–104.
- O'Neil RG. Adrenal steroid regulation of potassium transport. In: Giebisch GH, editor. Current topics in membranes and transport: potassium transport: physiology and pathophysiology. New York: Academic Press; 1987. p. 185–206.
- Schultz SG. Cellular models of epithelial ion transport. In: Andreoli TE, Hoffman JF, Fanestil DD, Schultz SG, editors. Physiology of membrane disorders. New York: Plenum Press; 1986. p. 519–34.
- Sweadner KJ, Goldin SM. Active transport of sodium and potassium ions: mechanism, function, and regulation. *N Engl J Med* 1980;302:777–83.
- Palmer LG, Frindt G. Amiloride-sensitive Na channels from the apical membrane of the rat cortical collecting tubule. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* 1986;83:2767–70.
- Fawcett DW. Bloom and Fawcett: a textbook of histology. Philadelphia: W.B. Saunders; 1986.
- Farquhar MG, Palade GE. Junctional complexes in various epithelia. *J Cell Biol* 1963;17:375–412.
- Schwarz MA, Owaribe K, Kartenbeck J, Franke WW. Desmosomes and hemidesmosomes: constitutive molecular components. *Annu Rev Cell Biol* 1990;6:461–91.
- Franke WW, Winter S, Grund C, Schmid E, Schiller DL, et al. Isolation and characterization of desmosome-associated tonofilaments from rat intestinal brush border. *J Cell Biol* 1981;90:116–27.
- Ben-Ze'ev A, Geiger B. Differential molecular interactions of beta-catenin and plakoglobin in adhesion, signaling and cancer. *Curr Opin Cell Biol* 1998;10:629–39.
- Simon AM. Gap junctions: more roles and new structural data. *Trends Cell Biol* 1999;9:169–70.
- Simon AM, Goodenough DA. Diverse functions of vertebrate gap junctions. *Trends Cell Biol* 1998;8:477–83.
- Fromter E, Diamond J. Route of passive ion permeation in epithelia. *Nat New Biol* 1972;235:9–13.
- Madara JL, Hecht G. Tight (occluding) junctions in cultured (and native) epithelial cells. In: Matlin KS, Valentich JD, editors. Functional epithelial cells in culture. New York: Alan R. Liss; 1989. p. 131–64.
- Shen L, Weber CR, Raleigh DR, Yu D, Turner JR. Tight junction pore and leak pathways: a dynamic duo. *Annu Rev Physiol* 2011;73:283–309.
- Anderson JM, Van Itallie CM. Physiology and function of the tight junction. *Cold Spring Harb Perspect Biol* 2009;1:a002584.
- Cerejido M, Ponce A, Gonzalez-Mariscal L. Tight junctions and apical/basolateral polarity. *J Membr Biol* 1989;110:1–9.
- Gonzalez-Mariscal L, Chavez de Ramirez B, Cerejido M. Tight junction formation in cultured epithelial cells (MDCK). *J Membr Biol* 1985;86:113–25.
- Hartssock A, Nelson WJ. Adherens and tight junctions: Structure, function and connections to the actin cytoskeleton. *Biochim Biophys Acta* 2008;1778:660–9.
- Schneeberger EE, Lynch RD. The tight junction: a multifunctional complex. *Am J Physiol Cell Physiol* 2004;286:C1213–28.
- Stevenson BR, Anderson JM, Bullivant S. The epithelial tight junction: Structure, function and preliminary biochemical characterization. *Mol Cell Biochem* 1988;83:129–45.

- [28] Stevenson BR, Keon BH. The tight junction: morphology to molecules. *Annu Rev Cell Dev Biol* 1998;14:89–109.
- [29] Denker BM, Sabath E. The biology of epithelial cell tight junctions in the kidney. *J Am Soc Nephrol* 2011;22:622–5.
- [30] Hendler RW. Biological membrane ultrastructure. *Physiol Rev* 1971;51:66–97.
- [31] Dragsten PR, Blumenthal R, Handler JS. Membrane asymmetry in epithelia: is the tight junction a barrier to diffusion in the plasma membrane? *Nature* 1981;294:718–22.
- [32] van Meer G, Simons K. The function of tight junctions in maintaining differences in lipid composition between the apical and the basolateral cell surface domains of MDCK cells. *EMBO J* 1986;5:1455–64.
- [33] van Meer G, Gumbiner B, Simons K. The tight junction does not allow lipid molecules to diffuse from one epithelial cell to the next. *Nature* 1986;322:639–41.
- [34] Staehelin LA. Further observations on the fine structure of freeze-cleaved tight junctions. *J Cell Sci* 1973;13:763–86.
- [35] Claude P, Goodenough DA. Fracture faces of zonulae occludentes from “tight” and “leaky” epithelia. *J Cell Biol* 1973;58:390–400.
- [36] Stevenson BR, Siliciano JD, Mooseker MS, Goodenough DA. Identification of ZO-1: a high molecular weight polypeptide associated with the tight junction (zonula occludens) in a variety of epithelia. *J Cell Biol* 1986;103:755–66.
- [37] Fanning AS, Van Itallie C, Anderson JM. Zonula occludens (ZO)-1 and -2 regulate apical cell structure and the zonula adherens cytoskeleton in polarized epithelia. *Mol Biol Cell* 2011;23(4):577–90.
- [38] Angelow S, Ahlstrom R, Yu ASL. Biology of claudins. *AJP: Renal Physiol* 2008;295:F867–76.
- [39] Balkovetz DF. Claudins at the gate: Determinants of renal epithelial tight junction paracellular permeability. *Am J Physiol Renal Physiol* 2006;290:F572–9.
- [40] Colegio OR, Van Itallie CM, McCrea HJ, Rahner C, Anderson JM. Claudins create charge-selective channels in the paracellular pathway between epithelial cells. *Am J Physiol Cell Physiol* 2002;283:C142–7.
- [41] Furuse M, Tsukita S. Claudins in occluding junctions of humans and flies. *Trends Cell Biol* 2006;16:181–8.
- [42] Morita K, Furuse M, Fujimoto K, Tsukita S. Claudin multigene family encoding four-transmembrane domain protein components of tight junction strands. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* 1999;96:511–6.
- [43] Van Itallie CM, Anderson JM. Claudins and epithelial paracellular transport. *Annu Rev Physiol* 2006;68:403–29.
- [44] Furuse M. Molecular basis of the core structure of tight junctions. *Cold Spring Harb Perspect Biol* 2010;2:a002907-a.
- [45] Furuse M, Sasaki H, Fujimoto K, Tsukita S. A single gene product, claudin-1 or -2, reconstitutes tight junction strands and recruits occludin in fibroblasts. *J Cell Biol* 1998;143:391–401.
- [46] Furuse M, Furuse K, Sasaki H, Tsukita S. Conversion of zonulae occludentes from tight to leaky strand type by introducing claudin-2 into Madin–Darby canine kidney I cells. *J Cell Biol* 2001;153:263–72.
- [47] Kiuchi-Saishin Y, Gotoh S, Furuse M, Takasuga A, Tano Y, et al. Differential expression patterns of claudins, tight junction membrane proteins, in mouse nephron segments. *J Am Soc Nephrol JASN* 2002;13:875–86.
- [48] Haskins J, Gu L, Wittchen ES, Hibbard J, Stevenson BR. ZO-3, a novel member of the MAGUK protein family found at the tight junction, interacts with ZO-1 and occludin. *J Cell Biol* 1998;141:199–208.
- [49] Jesaitis LA, Goodenough DA. Molecular characterization and tissue distribution of ZO-2, a tight junction protein homologous to ZO-1 and the *Drosophila* discs-large tumor suppressor protein. *J Cell Biol* 1994;124:949–61.
- [50] Marchiando AM, Graham WV, Turner JR. Epithelial barriers in homeostasis and disease. *Annu Rev Pathol* 2010;5:119–44
- [51] Hecht G, Pestic L, Nikcevic G, Koutsouris A, et al. Expression of the catalytic domain of myosin light chain kinase increases paracellular permeability. *Am J Physiol* 1996;271:C1678–84.
- [52] Turner JR, Rill BK, Carlson SL, Carnes D, Kerner R, Mrsny RJ, et al. Physiological regulation of epithelial tight junctions is associated with myosin light-chain phosphorylation. *Am J Physiol* 1997;273:C1378–85.
- [53] Yap AS, Briehner WM, Gumbiner BM. Molecular and functional analysis of cadherin-based adherens junctions. *Annu Rev Cell Dev Biol* 1997;13:119–46.
- [54] Nelson WJ. Regulation of cell–cell adhesion by the cadherin–catenin complex. *Biochem Soc Trans* 2008;36:149–55.
- [55] Barth AI, Nathke IS, Nelson WJ. Cadherins, catenins and APC protein: interplay between cytoskeletal complexes and signaling pathways. *Curr Opin Cell Biol* 1997;9:683–90.
- [56] Gumbiner B, Lowenkopf T, Apatira D. Identification of a 160-kDa polypeptide that binds to the tight junction protein ZO-1. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* 1991;88:3460–4.
- [57] Griffith LD, Bulger RE, Trump BF. Fine structure and staining of mucosubstances on “intercalated cells” from the rat distal convoluted tubule and collecting duct. *Anat Rec* 1968;160:643–62.
- [58] Maunsbach AB. Cellular mechanisms of tubular protein transport. *Int Rev Physiol* 1976;11:145–67.
- [59] Welling LW, Welling DJ. Surface areas of brush border and lateral cell walls in the rabbit proximal nephron. *Kidney Int* 1975;8:343–8.
- [60] Mandel LJ, Balaban RS. Stoichiometry and coupling of active transport to oxidative metabolism in epithelial tissues. *Am J Physiol* 1981;240:F357–71.
- [61] Mooseker MS. Organization, chemistry, and assembly of the cytoskeletal apparatus of the intestinal brush border. *Annu Rev Cell Biol* 1985;1:209–41.
- [62] Brown JW, McKnight CJ. Molecular model of the microvillar cytoskeleton and organization of the brush border. *PLoS One* 2010;5:e9406.
- [63] McConnell RE, Benesh AE, Mao S, Tabb DL, Tyska MJ. Proteomic analysis of the enterocyte brush border. *Am J Physiol Gastrointest Liver Physiol* 2011;300:G914–26.
- [64] Rodman JS, Mooseker M, Farquhar MG. Cytoskeletal proteins of the rat kidney proximal tubule brush border. *Eur J Cell Biol* 1986;42:319–27.
- [65] Bretscher A, Weber K. Localization of actin and microfilament-associated proteins in the microvilli and terminal web of the intestinal brush border by immunofluorescence microscopy. *J Cell Biol* 1978;79:839–45.
- [66] Glenney Jr. JR, Glenney P. Fodrin is the general spectrin-like protein found in most cells whereas spectrin and the TW protein have a restricted distribution. *Cell* 1983;34:503–12.
- [67] Drenckhahn D, Groschel-Stewart U. Localization of myosin, actin, and tropomyosin in rat intestinal epithelium: immunohistochemical studies at the light and electron microscope levels. *J Cell Biol* 1980;86:475–82.
- [68] Hirokawa N, Keller III TC, Chasan R, Mooseker MS. Mechanism of brush border contractility studied by the quick-freeze, deep-etch method. *J Cell Biol* 1983;96:1325–36.
- [69] Mooseker MS. Brush border motility. Microvillar contraction in triton-treated brush borders isolated from intestinal epithelium. *J Cell Biol* 1976;71:417–33.
- [70] Hayden SM, Wolenski JS, Mooseker MS. Binding of brush border myosin I to phospholipid vesicles. *J Cell Biol* 1990;111:443–51.

- [71] Mooseker MS, Coleman TR. The 110-kD protein-calmodulin complex of the intestinal microvillus (brush border myosin I) is a mechanoenzyme. *J Cell Biol* 1989;108:2395–400.
- [72] Coluccio LM, Bretscher A. Reassociation of microvillar core proteins: making a microvillar core *in vitro*. *J Cell Biol* 1989;108:495–502.
- [73] Matsudaira PT, Burgess DR. Identification and organization of the components in the isolated microvillus cytoskeleton. *J Cell Biol* 1979;83:667–73.
- [74] Garcia A, Coudrier E, Carboni J, Anderson J, Vanderkerkhove J, Mooseker M, et al. Partial deduced sequence of the 110-kD-calmodulin complex of the avian intestinal microvillus shows that this mechanoenzyme is a member of the myosin I family. *J Cell Biol* 1989;109:2895–903.
- [75] Hoshimaru M, Nakanishi S. Identification of a new type of mammalian myosin heavy chain by molecular cloning. Overlap of its mRNA with preprotachykinin B mRNA. *J Biol Chem* 1987;262:14625–32.
- [76] Cheney RE, Mooseker MS. Unconventional myosins. *Curr Opin Cell Biol* 1992;4:27–35.
- [77] Mooseker MS, Cheney RE. Unconventional myosins. *Annu Rev Cell Dev Biol* 1995;11:633–75.
- [78] Drenckhahn D, Dermietzel R. Organization of the actin filament cytoskeleton in the intestinal brush border: a quantitative and qualitative immunoelectron microscope study. *J Cell Biol* 1988;107:1037–48.
- [79] McConnell RE, Tyska MJ. Leveraging the membrane – cytoskeleton interface with myosin-1. *Trends Cell Biol* 2010;20:418–26.
- [80] Fath KR, Burgess DR. Golgi-derived vesicles from developing epithelial cells bind actin filaments and possess myosin-I as a cytoplasmically oriented peripheral membrane protein. *J Cell Biol* 1993;120:117–27.
- [81] Fath KR, Trimbur GM, Burgess DR. Molecular motors are differentially distributed on Golgi membranes from polarized epithelial cells. *J Cell Biol* 1994;126:661–75.
- [82] Barylko B, Wagner MC, Reizes O, Albanesi JP. Purification and characterization of a mammalian myosin I. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* 1992;89:490–4.
- [83] Coudrier E, Kerjaschki D, Louvard D. Cytoskeleton organization and submembranous interactions in intestinal and renal brush borders. *Kidney Int* 1988;34:309–20.
- [84] Coluccio LM. Identification of the microvillar 110-kDa calmodulin complex (myosin-1) in kidney. *Eur J Cell Biol* 1991;56:286–94.
- [85] Bretscher A, Weber K. Villin: the major microfilament-associated protein of the intestinal microvillus. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* 1979;76:2321–5.
- [86] Arpin M, Pringault E, Finidori J, Garcia A, Jeltsch JM, Vanderkerckhove J, et al. Sequence of human villin: a large duplicated domain homologous with other actin-severing proteins and a unique small carboxy-terminal domain related to villin specificity. *J Cell Biol* 1988;107:1759–66.
- [87] Matsudaira PT, Burgess DR. Partial reconstruction of the microvillus core bundle: characterization of villin as a Ca⁺⁺-dependent, actin-bundling/depolymerizing protein. *J Cell Biol* 1982;92:648–56.
- [88] Robine S, Huet C, Moll R, Sahuquillo-Merino C, Coudrier E, Zweibaum A, et al. Can villin be used to identify malignant and undifferentiated normal digestive epithelial cells? *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* 1985;82:8488–92.
- [89] Costa de Beauregard MA, Pringault E, Robine S, Louvard D. Suppression of villin expression by antisense RNA impairs brush border assembly in polarized epithelial intestinal cells. *EMBO J* 1995;14:409–21.
- [90] Pinson KI, Dunbar L, Samuelson L, Gumucio DL. Targeted disruption of the mouse villin gene does not impair the morphogenesis of microvilli. *Dev Dyn* 1998;211:109–21.
- [91] Bretscher A, Weber K. Fimbrin, a new microfilament-associated protein present in microvilli and other cell surface structures. *J Cell Biol* 1980;86:335–40.
- [92] Volkmann N, DeRosier D, Matsudaira P, Hanein D. An atomic model of actin filaments cross-linked by fimbrin and its implications for bundle assembly and function. *J Cell Biol* 2001;153:947–56.
- [93] Grimm-Gunter EM, Revenu C, Ramos S, Hurbain I, Smyth N, Ferrary E, et al. Plastin 1 binds to keratin and is required for terminal web assembly in the intestinal epithelium. *Mol Biol Cell* 2009;20:2549–62.
- [94] Bartles JR, Zheng L, Li A, Wierda A, Chen B. Small espin: a third actin-bundling protein and potential forked protein ortholog in brush border microvilli. *J Cell Biol* 1998;143:107–19.
- [95] Zheng L, Sekerkova G, Vranich K, Tilney LG, Mugnaini E, et al. The deaf jerker mouse has a mutation in the gene encoding the espin actin-bundling proteins of hair cell stereocilia and lacks espins. *Cell* 2000;102:377–85.
- [96] Loomis PA, Zheng L, Sekerkova G, Changyaleket B, Mugnaini E, et al. Espin cross-links cause the elongation of microvillus-type parallel actin bundles *in vivo*. *J Cell Biol* 2003;163:1045–55.
- [97] Revenu C, Ubelmann F, Hurbain I, El-Marjou F, Dingli F, Loew D, et al. A new role for the architecture of microvillus actin bundles in apical retention of membrane proteins. *Mol Biol Cell* 2011;23(2):324–36.
- [98] Bretscher A, Reczek D, Berryman M. Ezrin: a protein requiring conformational activation to link microfilaments to the plasma membrane in the assembly of cell surface structures. *J Cell Sci* 1997;110(Pt 24):3011–8.
- [99] Saotome I, Curto M, McClatchey AI. Ezrin is essential for epithelial organization and villus morphogenesis in the developing intestine. *Dev Cell* 2004;6:855–64.
- [100] Bacic D, Wagner CA, Hernando N, Kaissling B, Biber J, et al. Novel aspects in regulated expression of the renal type IIa Na/Pi-cotransporter. *Kidney Int Suppl* 2004;S5–12.
- [101] Burgess DR. Reactivation of intestinal epithelial cell brush border motility: ATP-dependent contraction via a terminal web contractile ring. *J Cell Biol* 1982;95:853–63.
- [102] Kerjaschki D, Noronha-Blob L, Sacktor B, Farquhar MG. Microdomains of distinctive glycoprotein composition in the kidney proximal tubule brush border. *J Cell Biol* 1984;98:1505–13.
- [103] Rodman JS, Seidman L, Farquhar MG. The membrane composition of coated pits, microvilli, endosomes, and lysosomes is distinctive in the rat kidney proximal tubule cell. *J Cell Biol* 1986;102:77–87.
- [104] Lina F, Satlinb LM. Polycystic kidney disease: the cilium as a common pathway in cystogenesis. *Curr Opin Pediatr* 2004;16:171–6.
- [105] Yoder BK, Mulroy S, Eustace H, Boucher C, Sandford R. Molecular pathogenesis of autosomal dominant polycystic kidney disease. *Expert Rev Mol Med* 2006;8:1–22.
- [106] Mollet G, Silbermann F, Delous M, Salomon R, Antignac C, et al. Characterization of the nephrocystin/nephrocystin-4 complex and subcellular localization of nephrocystin-4 to primary cilia and centrosomes. *Hum Mol Genet* 2005;14:645–56.
- [107] Lin F, Hiesberger T, Cordes K, Sinclair AM, Goldstein LS, Somlo S, et al. Kidney-specific inactivation of the KIF3A subunit of kinesin-II inhibits renal ciliogenesis and produces polycystic kidney disease. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* 2003;100:5286–91.
- [108] Takiar V, Caplan MJ. Polycystic kidney disease: pathogenesis and potential therapies. *Biochim Biophys Acta* 2011;1812:1337–43.

- [109] Amerongen HM, Mack JA, Wilson JM, Neutra MR. Membrane domains of intestinal epithelial cells: Distribution of Na⁺/K⁺-ATPase and the membrane skeleton in adult rat intestine during fetal development and after epithelial isolation. *J Cell Biol* 1989;109:2129–38.
- [110] Achler C, Filmer D, Merte C, Drenckhahn D. Role of microtubules in polarized delivery of apical membrane proteins to the brush border of the intestinal epithelium. *J Cell Biol* 1989;109:179–89.
- [111] McNeill H, Ozawa M, Kemler R, Nelson WJ. Novel function of the cell adhesion molecule uvomorulin as an inducer of cell surface polarity. *Cell* 1990;62:309–16.
- [112] Morrow JS, Cianci CD, Ardito T, Mann AS, Kashgarian M. Ankyrin links fodrin to the alpha subunit of Na,K-ATPase in Madin–Darby canine kidney cells and in intact renal tubule cells. *J Cell Biol* 1989;108:455–65.
- [113] Nelson WJ. Development and maintenance of epithelial polarity: a role for the submembranous cytoskeleton. In: Matlin KS, Valentich JD, editors. *Functional epithelial cells in culture*. New York: Alan R. Liss; 1989. p. 3–42.
- [114] Nelson WJ, Hammerton RW. A membrane-cytoskeletal complex containing Na⁺/K⁺-ATPase, ankyrin, and fodrin in Madin–Darby canine kidney (MDCK) cells: implications for the biogenesis of epithelial cell polarity. *J Cell Biol* 1989;108:893–902.
- [115] Nelson WJ, Hammerton RW, McNeill H. Role of the membrane-cytoskeleton in the spatial organization of the Na,K-ATPase in polarized epithelial cells. *Soc Gen Physiol Ser* 1991;46:77–87.
- [116] Nelson WJ, Hammerton RW, Wang AZ, Shore EM. Involvement of the membrane-cytoskeleton in development of epithelial cell polarity. *Semin Cell Biol* 1990;1:359–71.
- [117] Nelson WJ, Shore EM, Wang AZ, Hammerton RW. Identification of a membrane-cytoskeletal complex containing the cell adhesion molecule uvomorulin (E-cadherin), ankyrin, and fodrin in Madin–Darby canine kidney epithelial cells. *J Cell Biol* 1990;110:349–57.
- [118] Nelson WJ, Veshnock PJ. Dynamics of membrane-skeleton (fodrin) organization during development of polarity in Madin–Darby canine kidney epithelial cells. *J Cell Biol* 1986;103:1751–65.
- [119] Nelson WJ, Veshnock PJ. Ankyrin binding to (Na⁺ K⁺) ATPase and implications for the organization of membrane domains in polarized cells. *Nature* 1987;328:533–6.
- [120] Nelson WJ, Veshnock PJ. Modulation of fodrin (membrane skeleton) stability by cell–cell contact in Madin–Darby canine kidney epithelial cells. *J Cell Biol* 1987;104:1527–37.
- [121] Parczyk K, Haase W, Kondor-Koch C. Microtubules are involved in the secretion of proteins at the apical cell surface of the polarized epithelial cell, Madin–Darby canine kidney. *J Biol Chem* 1989;264:16837–46.
- [122] Rindler MJ, Ivanov IE, Sabatini DD. Microtubule-acting drugs lead to the nonpolarized delivery of the influenza hemagglutinin to the cell surface of polarized Madin–Darby canine kidney cells. *J Cell Biol* 1987;104:231–41.
- [123] Salas PJ, Vega-Salas DE, Hochman J, Rodriguez-Boulan E, Edidin M. Selective anchoring in the specific plasma membrane domain: a role in epithelial cell polarity. *J Cell Biol* 1988;107:2363–76.
- [124] Grindstaff KK, Bacallao RL, Nelson WJ. Apiconuclear organization of microtubules does not specify protein delivery from the trans-Golgi network to different membrane domains in polarized epithelial cells. *Mol Biol Cell* 1998;9:685–99.
- [125] Spiliotis ET, Hunt SJ, Hu Q, Kinoshita M, Nelson WJ. Epithelial polarity requires septin coupling of vesicle transport to polyglutamylated microtubules. *J Cell Biol* 2008;180:295–303.
- [126] Yurchenco PD. Basement membranes: cell scaffoldings and signaling platforms. *Cold Spring Harb Perspect Biol* 2011;3:a004911-a.
- [127] Miner JH. Organogenesis of the kidney glomerulus: focus on the glomerular basement membrane. *Organogenesis* 2011;7:75–82.
- [128] Aumailley M. Structure and supramolecular organization of basement membranes. *Kidney Int Suppl* 1995;49:S4–7.
- [129] Miner JH. Renal basement membrane components. *Kidney Int* 1999;56:2016–24.
- [130] Miner JH, Yurchenco PD. Laminin functions in tissue morphogenesis. *Annu Rev Cell Dev Biol* 2004;20:255–84.
- [131] Aumailley M, Bruckner-Tuderman L, Carter W, et al. A simplified laminin nomenclature. *Matrix Biol* 2005;24:326–32.
- [132] Li S, Edgar D, Fassler R, Wadsworth W, Yurchenco PD. The role of laminin in embryonic cell polarization and tissue organization. *Dev Cell* 2003;4:613–24.
- [133] Yurchenco PD, Patton BL. Developmental and pathogenic mechanisms of basement membrane assembly. *Curr Pharm Des* 2009;15:1277–94.
- [134] Yurchenco P, Cheng Y. Laminin self-assembly: a three-arm interaction hypothesis for the formation of a network in basement membranes. *Contrib Nephrol* 1994;107:47–56.
- [135] Joly D, Berissi S, Bertrand A, Strehl L, Patey N, et al. Laminin 5 regulates polycystic kidney cell proliferation and cyst formation. *J Biol Chem* 2006;281:29181–9.
- [136] Joly D, Morel V, Hummel A, Ruello A, Nusbaum P, Patey N, et al. $\beta 4$ integrin and laminin 5 are aberrantly expressed in polycystic kidney disease. *Am J Pathol* 2003;163:1791–800.
- [137] Shannon MB, Patton BL, Harvey SJ, Miner JH. A hypomorphic mutation in the mouse laminin alpha5 gene causes polycystic kidney disease. *J Am Soc Nephrol* 2006;17:1913–22.
- [138] Zuk A, Matlin KS. Induction of a laminin isoform and alpha (3)beta(1)-integrin in renal ischemic injury and repair *in vivo*. *Am J Physiol Renal Physiol* 2002;283:F971–84.
- [139] Greciano PG, Moyano JV, Buschmann MM, Tang J, Lu Y, Rudnicki J, et al. Laminin 511 partners with laminin 332 to mediate directional migration of Madin–Darby canine kidney (MDCK) epithelial cells. *Mol Biol Cell* 2012;24:121–36.
- [140] Hynes RO. Integrins: bidirectional, allosteric signaling machines. *Cell* 2002;110:673–87.
- [141] Hemler ME. VLA proteins in the integrin family: structures, functions, and their role on leukocytes. *Annu Rev Immunol* 1990;8:365–400.
- [142] Kreidberg JA, Symons JM. Integrins in kidney development, function, and disease. *Am J Physiol Renal Physiol* 2000;279:F233–42.
- [143] Moyano JV, Greciano PG, Buschmann MM, Koch M, Matlin KS. Autocrine transforming growth factor- β 1 activation mediated by integrin α V β 3 regulates transcriptional expression of laminin-332 in Madin–Darby canine kidney epithelial cells. *Mol Biol Cell* 2010;21:3654–68.
- [144] Schoenenberger CA, Zuk A, Zinkl GM, Kendall D, Matlin KS. Integrin expression and localization in normal MDCK cells and transformed MDCK cells lacking apical polarity. *J Cell Sci* 1994;107(Pt 2):527–41.
- [145] Geiger B, Bershadsky A. Assembly and mechanosensory function of focal contacts. *Curr Opin Cell Biol* 2001;13:584–92.
- [146] Zamir E, Geiger B. Components of cell–matrix adhesions. *J Cell Sci* 2001;114:3577–9.
- [147] Zamir E, Geiger B. Molecular complexity and dynamics of cell–matrix adhesions. *J Cell Sci* 2001;114:3583–90.
- [148] Zamir E, Katz BZ, Aota S, Yamada KM, Geiger B, et al. Molecular diversity of cell–matrix adhesions. *J Cell Sci* 1999;112(Pt 11):1655–69.

- [149] Geiger B, Yamada KM. Molecular architecture and function of matrix adhesions. *Cold Spring Harb Perspect Biol* 2011;3:pii: a005033.
- [150] Tsurata D, Hashimoto T, Hamill K, Jones JCR. Hemidesmosomes and focal contact proteins: functions and cross-talk in keratinocytes, bullous diseases and wound healing. *J Derm Sci* 2011;62:1–7.
- [151] Zhang H, Labouesse M. The making of hemidesmosome structures *in vivo*. *Dev Dyn* 2010;239:1465–76.
- [152] Li S, Liquari P, McKee KK, Harrison D, Patel R, Lee S, et al. Laminin-sulfatide binding initiates basement membrane assembly and enables receptor signaling in Schwann cells and fibroblasts. *J Cell Biol* 2005;169:179–89.
- [153] Zinkl GM, Zuk A, van der Bijl P, van Meer G, Matlin KS. An antiglycolipid antibody inhibits Madin–Darby canine kidney cell adhesion to laminin and interferes with basolateral polarization and tight junction formation. *J Cell Biol* 1996;133:695–708.
- [154] Ekblom P. Developmentally regulated conversion of mesenchyme to epithelium. *FASEB J* 1989;3:2141–50.
- [155] Molitoris B, Wilson P, Schrier R, Simon FR. Ischemia induces partial loss of surface membrane polarity and accumulation of putative calcium ionophores. *J Clin Invest* 1985;76(6):2097–105.
- [156] Zuk A, Bonventre JV, Brown D, Matlin KS. Polarity, integrin, and extracellular matrix dynamics in the postischemic rat kidney. *Am J Physiol* 1998;275:C711–31.
- [157] Nelson WJ. Remodeling epithelial cell organization: transitions between front–rear and apical–basal polarity. *Cold Spring Harb Perspect Biol* 2009;1:a000513.
- [158] Simons K, Fuller SD. Cell surface polarity in epithelia. *Annu Rev Cell Biol* 1985;1:243–88.
- [159] Gausch CR, Hard WL, Smith TF. Characterization of an established line of canine kidney cells (MDCK). *Proc Soc Exp Biol Med* 1966;122:931–5.
- [160] Madin SH, Darby NB. In: American type culture collection catalogue of strains II. Rockville, Maryland: American Type Culture Collection; 1975.
- [161] Herzlinger DA, Easton TG, Ojakian GK. The MDCK epithelial cell line expresses a cell surface antigen of the kidney distal tubule. *J Cell Biol* 1982;93:269–77.
- [162] Leighton J, Brada Z, Estes LW, Justh G. Secretory activity and oncogenicity of a cell line (MDCK) derived from canine kidney. *Science* 1969;163:472–3.
- [163] Abaza NA, Leighton J, Schultz SG. Effects of ouabain on the function and structure of a cell line (MDCK) derived from canine kidney. I. Light microscopic observations of monolayer growth. *In Vitro* 1974;10:72–183.
- [164] Cerejido M, Ehrenfeld J, Fernandez-Castelo S, Meza I. Fluxes, junctions, and blisters in cultured monolayers of epithelioid cells (MDCK). *Ann NY Acad Sci* 1981;372:422–41.
- [165] Rodriguez Boulan E, Sabatini DD. Asymmetric budding of viruses in epithelial monolayers: a model system for study of epithelial polarity. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* 1978;75:5071–5.
- [166] Rodriguez Boulan E, Pendergast M. Polarized distribution of viral envelope proteins in the plasma membrane of infected epithelial cells. *Cell* 1980;20:45–54.
- [167] Jat PS, Noble MD, Ataliotis P, Tanaka Y, Yannoutsos N, Larsen L, et al. Direct derivation of conditionally immortal cell lines from an H-2Kb-tsA58 transgenic mouse. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* 1991;88:5096–100.
- [168] Geng H, Lan R, Wang G, Siddiqi AR, Naski MC, Brooks AI, et al. Inhibition of autoregulated TGFbeta signaling simultaneously enhances proliferation and differentiation of kidney epithelium and promotes repair following renal ischemia. *Am J Pathol* 2009;174:1291–308.
- [169] Racusen LC, Monteil C, Sgrignoli A, Lucskay M, Marouillat S, Rhim JG, Morin JP. Cell lines with extended *in vitro* growth potential from human renal proximal tubule: characterization, response to inducers, and comparison with established cell lines. *J Lab Clin Med* 1997;129:318–29.
- [170] Ryan MJ, Johnson G, Kirk J, Fuerstenberg SM, Zager RA, et al. HK-2: an immortalized proximal tubule epithelial cell line from normal adult human kidney. *Kidney Int* 1994;45:48–57.
- [171] Handler JS, Preston AS, Steele RE. Factors affecting the differentiation of epithelial transport and responsiveness to hormones. *Fed Proc* 1984;43:2221–4.
- [172] Misfeldt DS, Hamamoto ST, Pitelka DR. Transepithelial transport in cell culture. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* 1976;73:1212–6.
- [173] Fuller SD, Simons K. Transferrin receptor polarity and recycling accuracy in “tight” and “leaky” strains of Madin–Darby canine kidney cells. *J Cell Biol* 1986;103:1767–79.
- [174] Matlin KS, Simons K. Sorting of an apical plasma membrane glycoprotein occurs before it reaches the cell surface in cultured epithelial cells. *J Cell Biol* 1984;99:2131–9.
- [175] Caplan MJ, Anderson HC, Palade GE, Jamieson JD. Intracellular sorting and polarized cell surface delivery of (Na⁺K⁺)ATPase, an endogenous component of MDCK cell basolateral plasma membranes. *Cell* 1986;46:623–31.
- [176] Caplan MJ, Stow JL, Newman AP, Madri J, Anderson HC, Farquhar MG, et al. Dependence on pH of polarized sorting of secreted proteins. *Nature* 1987;329:632–5.
- [177] O’Brien LE, Zegers MM, Mostov KE. Opinion: building epithelial architecture: Insights from three-dimensional culture models. *Nat Rev Mol Cell Biol* 2002;3:531–7.
- [178] Zegers MM, O’Brien LE, Yu W, Datta A, Mostov KE. Epithelial polarity and tubulogenesis *in vitro*. *Trends Cell Biol* 2003;13:169–76.
- [179] Schoenberger CA, Matlin KS. Cell polarity and epithelial oncogenesis. *Trends Cell Biol* 1991;1:87–92.
- [180] Yeaman C, Grindstaff KK, Nelson WJ. New perspectives on mechanisms involved in generating epithelial cell polarity. *Physiol Rev* 1999;79:73–98.
- [181] Macara IG, Mili S. Polarity and differential inheritance: Universal attributes of life? *Cell* 2008;135:801–12.
- [182] Bryant DM, Mostov KE. From cells to organs: building polarized tissue. *Nat Rev Mol Cell Biol* 2008;9:887–901.
- [183] Lelongt B, Ronco P. Role of extracellular matrix in kidney development and repair. *Pediatr Nephrol* 2003;18:731–42.
- [184] Wang AZ, Ojakian GK, Nelson WJ. Steps in the morphogenesis of a polarized epithelium. II. Disassembly and assembly of plasma membrane domains during reversal of epithelial cell polarity in multicellular epithelial (MDCK) cysts. *J Cell Sci* 1990;95(Pt 1):153–65.
- [185] Balcarova-Stander J, Pfeiffer SE, Fuller SD, Simons K. Development of cell surface polarity in the epithelial Madin–Darby canine kidney (MDCK) cell line. *EMBO J* 1984;3:2687–94.
- [186] Vega-Salas DE, Salas PJ, Gundersen D, Rodriguez-Boulan E. Formation of the apical pole of epithelial (Madin–Darby canine kidney) cells: polarity of an apical protein is independent of tight junctions while segregation of a basolateral marker requires cell–cell interactions. *J Cell Biol* 1987;104:905–16.
- [187] Vega-Salas DE, Salas PJ, Rodriguez-Boulan E. Modulation of the expression of an apical plasma membrane protein of Madin–Darby canine kidney epithelial cells: cell–cell interactions control the appearance of a novel intracellular storage compartment. *J Cell Biol* 1987;104:1249–59.
- [188] Capaldo CT, Macara IG. Depletion of E-cadherin disrupts establishment but not maintenance of cell junctions in

- Madin–Darby canine kidney epithelial cells. *Mol Biol Cell* 2007;18:189–200.
- [189] Takai Y, Miyoshi J, Ikeda W, Ogita H. Nectins and nectin-like molecules: roles in contact inhibition of cell movement and proliferation. *Nat Rev Mol Cell Biol* 2008;9:603–15.
- [190] Ehrlich J, Hansen M, Nelson W. Spatio-temporal regulation of rac1 localization and lamellipodia dynamics during epithelial cell–cell adhesion. *Dev Cell* 2002;3:259–70.
- [191] Laprise P, Tepass U. Novel insights into epithelial polarity proteins in *Drosophila*. *Trends Cell Biol* 2011;21:401–8.
- [192] Pieczynski J, Margolis B. Protein complexes that control renal epithelial polarity. *AJP: Renal Physiology* 2011;300:F589–601.
- [193] Bryant D, Datta A, Rodriguez-Fraticelli A, Peranen J, Martin-Belmonte F, et al. A molecular network for de novo generation of the apical surface and lumen. *Nat Cell Biol* 2010;12(11):1035–45 advance online publication.
- [194] Macara IG, Spang A. Closing the GAP between polarity and vesicle transport. *Cell* 2006;125:419–21.
- [195] Ekblom P. Formation of basement membranes in the embryonic kidney: an immunohistological study. *J Cell Biol* 1981;91(1):1–10.
- [196] Klein G, Langegger M, Timpl R, Ekblom P. Role of laminin a chain in the development of epithelial cell polarity. *Cell* 1988;55:331–41.
- [197] Sorokin L, Sonnenberg A, Aumailley M, Timpl R, Ekblom P. Recognition of the laminin E8 cell-binding site by an integrin possessing the alpha 6 subunit is essential for epithelial polarization in developing kidney tubules. *J Cell Biol* 1990;111:1265–73.
- [198] O'Brien LE, Jou TS, Pollack AL, Zhang Q, Hansen SH, Yurchenco P, et al. Rac1 orientates epithelial apical polarity through effects on basolateral laminin assembly. *Nat Cell Biol* 2001;3:831–8.
- [199] Yu W, Datta A, Leroy P, O'Brien LE, Mak G, Jou TS, et al. Beta1-integrin orients epithelial polarity via Rac1 and laminin. *Mol Biol Cell* 2005;16:433–45.
- [200] Cohen D, Fernandez D, Lázaro-Díéguez F, Müsch A. The serine/threonine kinase Par1b regulates epithelial lumen polarity via IRSp53-mediated cell–ECM signaling. *J Cell Biol* 2011;192:525–40.
- [201] Masuda-Hirata M, Suzuki A, Amano Y, Yamashita K, Ide M, Yamanaka T, et al. Intracellular polarity protein PAR-1 regulates extracellular laminin assembly by regulating the dystroglycan complex. *Genes Cells* 2009;14:835–50.
- [202] Martin-Belmonte F, Gassama A, Datta A, Yu W, Rescher U, Gerke V, et al. PTEN-mediated apical segregation of phosphoinositides controls epithelial morphogenesis through Cdc42. *Cell* 2007;128:383–97.
- [203] Bacallao R, Antony C, Dotti C, Karsenti E, Stelzer EH, et al. The subcellular organization of Madin–Darby canine kidney cells during the formation of a polarized epithelium. *J Cell Biol* 1989;109:2817–32.
- [204] Bre MH, Kreis TE, Karsenti E. Control of microtubule nucleation and stability in Madin–Darby canine kidney cells: the occurrence of noncentrosomal, stable deetyrosinated microtubules. *J Cell Biol* 1987;105:1283–96.
- [205] Bre MH, Pepperkok R, Hill AM, Levilliers N, Ansorge W, Stelzer EH, et al. Regulation of microtubule dynamics and nucleation during polarization in MDCK II cells. *J Cell Biol* 1990;111:3013–21.
- [206] Bowen JR, Hwang D, Bai X, Roy D, Spiliotis ET. Septin GTPases spatially guide microtubule organization and plus end dynamics in polarizing epithelia. *J Cell Biol* 2011;194:187–97.
- [207] Spiliotis ET, Gladfelter AS. Spatial Guidance of cell asymmetry: septin GTPases show the way. *Traffic (Copenhagen, Denmark)* 2012;13(2):195–203.
- [208] Hotta A, Kawakatsu T, Nakatani T, Sato T, Matsui C, et al. Laminin-based cell adhesion anchors microtubule plus ends to the epithelial cell basal cortex through LL5 α / β . *J Cell Biol* 2010;189:901–17.
- [209] Mogensen MM, Tucker JB, Mackie JB, Prescott AR, Nathke IS. The adenomatous polyposis coli protein unambiguously localizes to microtubule plus ends and is involved in establishing parallel arrays of microtubule bundles in highly polarized epithelial cells. *J Cell Biol* 2002;157:1041–8.
- [210] Reilein A, Nelson WJ. APC is a component of an organizing template for cortical microtubule networks. *Nat Cell Biol* 2005;7:463–73.
- [211] Reilein A, Yamada S, Nelson WJ. Self-organization of an acentrosomal microtubule network at the basal cortex of polarized epithelial cells. *J Cell Biol* 2005;171:845–55.
- [212] Cohen D, Brennwald PJ, Rodriguez-Boulan E, Müsch A. Mammalian PAR-1 determines epithelial lumen polarity by organizing the microtubule cytoskeleton. *J Cell Biol* 2004;164:717–27.
- [213] Walter P, Lingappa VR. Mechanism of protein translocation across the endoplasmic reticulum membrane. *Annu Rev Cell Biol* 1986;2:499–516.
- [214] Fuller SD, Bravo R, Simons K. An enzymatic assay reveals that proteins destined for the apical or basolateral domains of an epithelial cell line share the same late Golgi compartments. *EMBO J* 1985;4:297–307.
- [215] Rindler MJ, Ivanov IE, Plesken H, Rodriguez-Boulan E, Sabatini DD. Viral glycoproteins destined for apical or basolateral plasma membrane domains traverse the same Golgi apparatus during their intracellular transport in doubly infected Madin–Darby canine kidney cells. *J Cell Biol* 1984;98:1304–19.
- [216] Matlin KS, Simons K. Reduced temperature prevents transfer of a membrane glycoprotein to the cell surface but does not prevent terminal glycosylation. *Cell* 1983;34:233–43.
- [217] Saraste J, Kuismanen E. Pre- and post-Golgi vacuoles operate in the transport of Semliki Forest virus membrane glycoproteins to the cell surface. *Cell* 1984;38:535–49.
- [218] Griffiths G, Pfeiffer S, Simons K, Matlin K. Exit of newly synthesized membrane proteins from the trans cisterna of the Golgi complex to the plasma membrane. *J Cell Biol* 1985;101:949–64.
- [219] Orci L, Ravazzola M, Amherdt M, Perrelet A, Powell SK, Quinn DL, et al. The trans-most cisternae of the Golgi complex: a compartment for sorting of secretory and plasma membrane proteins. *Cell* 1987;51:1039–51.
- [220] Tooze J, Tooze SA, Fuller SD. Sorting of progeny coronavirus from condensed secretory proteins at the exit from the trans-Golgi network of AtT20 cells. *J Cell Biol* 1987;105:1215–26.
- [221] Tooze SA, Huttner WB. Cell-free protein sorting to the regulated and constitutive secretory pathways. *Cell* 1990;60:837–47.
- [222] Griffiths G, Simons K. The trans Golgi network: sorting at the exit site of the Golgi complex. *Science* 1986;234:438–43.
- [223] Ang AL, Taguchi T, Francis S, Folsch H, Murrells LJ, Pypaert M, et al. Recycling endosomes can serve as intermediates during transport from the Golgi to the plasma membrane of MDCK cells. *J Cell Biol* 2004;167:531–43.
- [224] Farr GA, Hull M, Mellman I, Caplan MJ. Membrane proteins follow multiple pathways to the basolateral cell surface in polarized epithelial cells. *J Cell Biol* 2009;186:269–82.
- [225] Matlin K, Bainton DF, Pesonen M, Louvard D, Genty N, et al. Transepithelial transport of a viral membrane glycoprotein implanted into the apical plasma membrane of Madin–Darby canine kidney cells. I. Morphological evidence. *J Cell Biol* 1983;97:627–37.
- [226] Pfeiffer S, Fuller SD, Simons K. Intracellular sorting and basolateral appearance of the G protein of vesicular stomatitis

- virus in Madin–Darby canine kidney cells. *J Cell Biol* 1985;101:470–6.
- [227] Misek DE, Bard E, Rodriguez-Boulau E. Biogenesis of epithelial cell polarity: intracellular sorting and vectorial exocytosis of an apical plasma membrane glycoprotein. *Cell* 1984;39:537–46.
- [228] Sargiacomo M, Lisanti M, Graeve L, Le Bivic A, Rodriguez-Boulau E. Integral and peripheral protein composition of the apical and basolateral membrane domains in MDCK cells. *J Membr Biol* 1989;107:277–86.
- [229] Le Bivic A, Sambuy Y, Mostov K, Rodriguez-Boulau E. Vectorial targeting of an endogenous apical membrane sialoglycoprotein and uvomorulin in MDCK cells. *J Cell Biol* 1990;110:1533–9.
- [230] Lisanti MP, Le Bivic A, Saltiel AR, Rodriguez-Boulau E. Preferred apical distribution of glycosyl-phosphatidylinositol (GPI) anchored proteins: a highly conserved feature of the polarized epithelial cell phenotype. *J Membr Biol* 1990;113:155–67.
- [231] Patterson GH, Lippincott-Schwartz J. A photoactivatable GFP for selective photolabeling of proteins and cells. *Science* 2002;297:1873–7.
- [232] Keppler A, Kindermann M, Gendreizig S, Pick H, Vogel H, et al. Labeling of fusion proteins of O₆-alkylguanine-DNA alkyltransferase with small molecules *in vivo* and *in vitro*. *Methods* 2004;32:437–44.
- [233] Keppler A, Arrivoli C, Sironi L, Ellenberg J. Fluorophores for live cell imaging of AGT fusion proteins across the visible spectrum. *Biotechniques* 2006;41:167–70, 74–75.
- [234] Caplan MJ, Forbush III B, Palade GE, Jamieson JD. Biosynthesis of the Na,K-ATPase in Madin–Darby canine kidney cells. Activation and cell surface delivery. *J Biol Chem* 1990;265:3528–34.
- [235] Forbush III B, Hoffman JF. Evidence that ouabain binds to the same large polypeptide chain of dimeric Na,K-ATPase that is phosphorylated from Pi. *Biochemistry* 1979;18:2308–15.
- [236] Forbush III B, Kaplan JH, Hoffman JF. Characterization of a new photoaffinity derivative of ouabain: labeling of the large polypeptide and of a proteolipid component of the Na, K-ATPase. *Biochemistry* 1978;17:3667–76.
- [237] Hammerton RW, Krzeminski KA, Mays RW, Ryan TA, Wollner DA, et al. Mechanism for regulating cell surface distribution of Na⁺,K⁽⁺⁾-ATPase in polarized epithelial cells. *Science* 1991;254:847–50.
- [238] Mays RW, Siemers KA, Fritz BA, Lowe AW, van Meer G, et al. Hierarchy of mechanisms involved in generating Na/K-ATPase polarity in MDCK epithelial cells. *J Cell Biol* 1995;130:1105–15.
- [239] Gottardi CJ, Caplan MJ. Delivery of Na⁺,K⁽⁺⁾-ATPase in polarized epithelial cells. *Science* 1993;260:552–4. Author reply 4–6.
- [240] Bartles JR, Feracci HM, Stieger B, Hubbard AL. Biogenesis of the rat hepatocyte plasma membrane *in vivo*: comparison of the pathways taken by apical and basolateral proteins using subcellular fractionation. *J Cell Biol* 1987;105:1241–51.
- [241] Hoppe CA, Connolly TP, Hubbard AL. Transcellular transport of polymeric IgA in the rat hepatocyte: biochemical and morphological characterization of the transport pathway. *J Cell Biol* 1985;101:2113–23.
- [242] Sztul ES, Howell KE, Palade GE. Biogenesis of the polymeric IgA receptor in rat hepatocytes. II. Localization of its intracellular forms by cell fractionation studies. *J Cell Biol* 1985;100:1255–61.
- [243] Larkin JM, Sztul ES, Palade GE. Phosphorylation of the rat hepatic polymeric IgA receptor. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* 1986;83:4759–63.
- [244] Kipp H, Arias IM. Trafficking of canalicular ABC transporters in hepatocytes. *Annu Rev Physiol* 2002;64:595–608.
- [245] Wakabayashi Y, Lippincott-Schwartz J, Arias IM. Intracellular trafficking of bile salt export pump (ABCB11) in polarized hepatic cells: constitutive cycling between the canalicular membrane and rab11-positive endosomes. *Mol Biol Cell* 2004;15:3485–96.
- [246] Matter K, Brauchbar M, Bucher K, Hauri HP. Sorting of endogenous plasma membrane proteins occurs from two sites in cultured human intestinal epithelial cells (Caco-2). *Cell* 1990;60:429–37.
- [247] Hauri HP, Quaroni A, Isselbacher KJ. Biogenesis of intestinal plasma membrane: posttranslational route and cleavage of sucrase-isomaltase. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* 1979;76:5183–6.
- [248] Massey D, Feracci H, Gorvel JP, Rigal A, Soulie JM, et al. Evidence for the transit of aminopeptidase N through the basolateral membrane before it reaches the brush border of enterocytes. *J Membr Biol* 1987;96:19–25.
- [249] Mostov KE, Deitcher DL. Polymeric immunoglobulin receptor expressed in MDCK cells transcytoses IgA. *Cell* 1986;46:613–21.
- [250] Polishchuk R, Di Pentima A, Lippincott-Schwartz J. Delivery of raft-associated, GPI-anchored proteins to the apical surface of polarized MDCK cells by a transcytotic pathway. *Nat Cell Biol* 2004;6:297–307.
- [251] Paladino S, Pocard T, Catino MA, Zurzolo C. GPI-anchored proteins are directly targeted to the apical surface in fully polarized MDCK cells. *J Cell Biol* 2006;172:1023–34.
- [252] Hubbard AL, Stieger B, Bartles JR. Biogenesis of endogenous plasma membrane proteins in epithelial cells. *Annu Rev Physiol* 1989;51:755–70.
- [253] Welling PA, Weisz OA. Sorting it out in endosomes: an emerging concept in renal epithelial cell transport regulation. *Physiology (Bethesda)* 2010;25:280–92.
- [254] Lencer WI, Verkman AS, Arnaout MA, Ausiello DA, Brown D. Endocytic vesicles from renal papilla which retrieve the vasopressin-sensitive water channel do not contain a functional H⁺ ATPase. *J Cell Biol* 1990;111:379–89.
- [255] Fang L, Garuti R, Kim BY, Wade JB, Welling PA. The ARH adaptor protein regulates endocytosis of the ROMK potassium secretory channel in mouse kidney. *J Clin Invest* 2009;119:3278–89.
- [256] Butterworth MB, Edinger RS, Frizzell RA, Johnson JP. Regulation of the epithelial sodium channel by membrane trafficking. *Am J Physiol Renal Physiol* 2009;296:F10–24.
- [257] Schwartz GJ, Al-Awqati Q. Regulation of transepithelial H⁺ transport by exocytosis and endocytosis. *Annu Rev Physiol* 1986;48:153–61.
- [258] Mount DB. Regulated endocytosis of NCC. *Am J Physiol Renal Physiol* 2010;299:F297–9.
- [259] Hu MC, Fan L, Crowder LA, Karim-Jimenez Z, Murer H, et al. Dopamine acutely stimulates Na⁺/H⁺ exchanger (NHE3) endocytosis via clathrin-coated vesicles: dependence on protein kinase A-mediated NHE3 phosphorylation. *J Biol Chem* 2001;276:26906–15.
- [260] Pedemonte CH, Efendiev R, Bertorello AM. Inhibition of Na, K-ATPase by dopamine in proximal tubule epithelial cells. *Semin Nephrol* 2005;25:322–7.
- [261] Gottlieb TA, Beaudry G, Rizzolo L, Colman A, Rindler M, Adesnik M, et al. Secretion of endogenous and exogenous proteins from polarized MDCK cell monolayers. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* 1986;83:2100–4.
- [262] Jones LV, Compans RW, Davis AR, Bos TJ, Nayak DP. Surface expression of influenza virus neuraminidase, an amino-terminally anchored viral membrane glycoprotein, in polarized epithelial cells. *Mol Cell Biol* 1985;5:2181–9.
- [263] Roth MG, Compans RW, Giusti L, Davis AR, Nayak DP, Gething MJ, et al. Influenza virus hemagglutinin expression is

- polarized in cells infected with recombinant SV40 viruses carrying cloned hemagglutinin DNA. *Cell* 1983;33:435–43.
- [264] Stephens EB, Compans RW, Earl P, Moss B. Surface expression of viral glycoproteins is polarized in epithelial cells infected with recombinant vaccinia viral vectors. *EMBO J* 1986;5:237–45.
- [265] Green RF, Meiss HK, Rodriguez-Boulan E. Glycosylation does not determine segregation of viral envelope proteins in the plasma membrane of epithelial cells. *J Cell Biol* 1981;89:230–9.
- [266] Roth MG, Fitzpatrick JP, Compans RW. Polarity of influenza and vesicular stomatitis virus maturation in MDCK cells: lack of a requirement for glycosylation of viral glycoproteins. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* 1979;76:6430–4.
- [267] Carmosino M, Valenti G, Caplan M, Svelto M. Polarized traffic towards the cell surface: how to find the route. *Biol Cell* 2010;102:75–91.
- [268] Davis CG, Lehrman MA, Russell DW, Anderson RG, Brown MS, et al. The J.D. mutation in familial hypercholesterolemia: amino acid substitution in cytoplasmic domain impedes internalization of LDL receptors. *Cell* 1986;45:15–24.
- [269] Lazarovits J, Roth M. A single amino acid change in the cytoplasmic domain allows the influenza virus hemagglutinin to be endocytosed through coated pits. *Cell* 1988;53:743–52.
- [270] Brewer CB, Roth MG. A single amino acid change in the cytoplasmic domain alters the polarized delivery of influenza virus hemagglutinin. *J Cell Biol* 1991;114:413–21.
- [271] Thomas DC, Brewer CB, Roth MG. Vesicular stomatitis virus glycoprotein contains a dominant cytoplasmic basolateral sorting signal critically dependent upon a tyrosine. *J Biol Chem* 1993;268:3313–20.
- [272] Thomas DC, Roth MG. The basolateral targeting signal in the cytoplasmic domain of glycoprotein G from vesicular stomatitis virus resembles a variety of intracellular targeting motifs related by primary sequence but having diverse targeting activities. *J Biol Chem* 1994;269:15732–9.
- [273] Lin S, Naim HY, Roth MG. Tyrosine-dependent basolateral sorting signals are distinct from tyrosine-dependent internalization signals. *J Biol Chem* 1997;272:26300–5.
- [274] Hunziker W, Mellman I. Expression of macrophage-lymphocyte Fc receptors in Madin–Darby canine kidney cells: polarity and transcytosis differ for isoforms with or without coated pit localization domains. *J Cell Biol* 1989;109:3291–302.
- [275] Hunziker W, Fumey C. A di-leucine motif mediates endocytosis and basolateral sorting of macrophage IgG Fc receptors in MDCK cells. *EMBO J* 1994;13:2963–9.
- [276] Matter K, Yamamoto EM, Mellman I. Structural requirements and sequence motifs for polarized sorting and endocytosis of LDL and Fc receptors in MDCK cells. *J Cell Biol* 1994;126:991–1004.
- [277] Hunziker W, Harter C, Matter K, Mellman I. Basolateral sorting in MDCK cells requires a distinct cytoplasmic domain determinant. *Cell* 1991;66:907–20.
- [278] Matter K, Hunziker W, Mellman I. Basolateral sorting of LDL receptor in MDCK cells: the cytoplasmic domain contains two tyrosine-dependent targeting determinants. *Cell* 1992;71:741–53.
- [279] Jones BG, Thomas L, Molloy SS, Thulin CD, Fry MD, Walsh KA, et al. Intracellular trafficking of furin is modulated by the phosphorylation state of a casein kinase II site in its cytoplasmic tail. *EMBO J* 1995;14:5869–83.
- [280] Simmen T, Nobile M, Bonifacino JS, Hunziker W. Basolateral sorting of furin in MDCK cells requires a phenylalanine-isoleucine motif together with an acidic amino acid cluster. *Mol Cell Biol* 1999;19:3136–44.
- [281] Odorizzi G, Trowbridge IS. Structural requirements for major histocompatibility complex class II invariant chain trafficking in polarized Madin–Darby canine kidney cells. *J Biol Chem* 1997;272:11757–62.
- [282] Cross GA. Eukaryotic protein modification and membrane attachment via phosphatidylinositol. *Cell* 1987;48:179–81.
- [283] Lisanti MP, Caras IW, Davitz MA, Rodriguez-Boulan E. A glycopospholipid membrane anchor acts as an apical targeting signal in polarized epithelial cells. *J Cell Biol* 1989;109:2145–56.
- [284] van Meer G. Polarity and polarized transport of membrane lipids in cultured epithelium. In: Matlin KS, Valentich JD, editors. *Functional epithelial cells in culture*. New York: Alan R. Liss; 1989. p. 43–69.
- [285] Brown DA, Crise B, Rose JK. Mechanism of membrane anchoring affects polarized expression of two proteins in MDCK cells. *Science* 1989;245(4925):1499–501.
- [286] Kundu A, Avalos RT, Sanderson CM, Nayak DP. Transmembrane domain of influenza virus neuraminidase, a type II protein, possesses an apical sorting signal in polarized MDCK cells. *J Virol* 1996;70:6508–15.
- [287] Roth MG, Gundersen D, Patil N, Rodriguez-Boulan E. The large external domain is sufficient for the correct sorting of secreted or chimeric influenza virus hemagglutinins in polarized monkey kidney cells. *J Cell Biol* 1987;104:769–82.
- [288] Mostov KE, Breitfeld P, Harris JM. An anchor-minus form of the polymeric immunoglobulin receptor is secreted predominantly apically in Madin–Darby canine kidney cells. *J Cell Biol* 1987;105:2031–6.
- [289] Scheiffelle P, Peranen J, Simons K. N-glycans as apical sorting signals in epithelial cells. *Nature* 1995;378:96–8.
- [290] Mostov KE, Simister NE. Transcytosis. *Cell* 1985;43:389–90.
- [291] Mostov KE, de Bruyn Kops A, Deitcher DL. Deletion of the cytoplasmic domain of the polymeric immunoglobulin receptor prevents basolateral localization and endocytosis. *Cell* 1986;47:359–64.
- [292] Aroeti B, Kosen PA, Kuntz ID, Cohen FE, Mostov KE. Mutational and secondary structural analysis of the basolateral sorting signal of the polymeric immunoglobulin receptor. *J Cell Biol* 1993;123:1149–60.
- [293] Reich V, Mostov K, Aroeti B. The basolateral sorting signal of the polymeric immunoglobulin receptor contains two functional domains. *J Cell Sci* 1996;109(Pt 8):2133–9.
- [294] Casanova JE, Breitfeld PP, Ross SA, Mostov KE. Phosphorylation of the polymeric immunoglobulin receptor required for its efficient transcytosis. *Science* 1990;248:742–5.
- [295] Wolosin JM, Forte JG. Stimulation of oxynic cell triggers K^+ and Cl^- conductances in apical H^+K^+ -ATPase membrane. *Am J Physiol* 1984;246:C537–45.
- [296] Hersey SJ, Sachs G. Gastric acid secretion. *Physiol Rev* 1995;75:155–89.
- [297] Dunbar LA, Caplan MJ. Ion pumps in polarized cells: Sorting and regulation of the Na^+ , K^+ - and H^+ , K^+ -ATPases. *J Biol Chem* 2001;276:29617–20.
- [298] Gottardi CJ, Caplan MJ. An ion-transporting ATPase encodes multiple apical localization signals. *J Cell Biol* 1993;121:283–93.
- [299] Muth TR, Gottardi CJ, Roush DL, Caplan MJ. A basolateral sorting signal is encoded in the alpha-subunit of Na-K-ATPase. *Am J Physiol* 1998;274:C688–96.
- [300] Dunbar LA, Aronson P, Caplan MJ. A transmembrane segment determines the steady-state localization of an ion-transporting adenosine triphosphatase. *J Cell Biol* 2000;148:769–78.
- [301] Courtois-Coutry N, Roush D, Rajendran V, McCarthy JB, Geibel J, Kashgarian M, et al. A tyrosine-based signal targets

- H/K-ATPase to a regulated compartment and is required for the cessation of gastric acid secretion. *Cell* 1997;90:501–10.
- [302] Wang T, Courtois-Coutry N, Giebisch G, Caplan MJ. A tyrosine-based signal regulates H-K-ATPase-mediated potassium reabsorption in the kidney. *Am J Physiol* 1998;275:F818–26.
- [303] Chuang JZ, Sung CH. The cytoplasmic tail of rhodopsin acts as a novel apical sorting signal in polarized MDCK cells. *J Cell Biol* 1998;142:1245–56.
- [304] Qi AD, Wolff SC, Nicholas RA. The apical targeting signal of the P2Y2 receptor is located in its first extracellular loop. *J Biol Chem* 2005;280:29169–75.
- [305] Ahn J, Mundigl O, Muth TR, Rudnick G, Caplan MJ. Polarized expression of GABA transporters in Madin–Darby canine kidney cells and cultured hippocampal neurons. *J Biol Chem* 1996;271:6917–24.
- [306] Pietrini G, Suh YJ, Edelmann L, Rudnick G, Caplan MJ. The axonal gamma-aminobutyric acid transporter GAT-1 is sorted to the apical membranes of polarized epithelial cells. *J Biol Chem* 1994;269:4668–74.
- [307] Muth TR, Ahn J, Caplan MJ. Identification of sorting determinants in the C-terminal cytoplasmic tails of the gamma-aminobutyric acid transporters GAT-2 and GAT-3. *J Biol Chem* 1998;273:25616–27.
- [308] Cheng J, Moyer BD, Milewski M, Loffing J, Ikeda M, et al. A Golgi-associated PDZ domain protein modulates cystic fibrosis transmembrane regulator plasma membrane expression. *J Biol Chem* 2002;277:3520–9.
- [309] Milewski MI, Mickle JE, Forrest JK, Stafford DM, Moyer BD, Cheng J, et al. PDZ-binding motif is essential but not sufficient to localize the C terminus of CFTR to the apical membrane. *J Cell Sci* 2001;114:719–26.
- [310] Moyer BD, Denton J, Karlson KH, Reynolds D, Wang S, Mickle JE, et al. PDZ-interacting domain in CFTR is an apical membrane polarization signal. *J Clin Invest* 1999;104:1353–61.
- [311] Moyer BD, Duhaime M, Shaw C, Denton J, Reynolds D, et al. The PDZ-interacting domain of cystic fibrosis transmembrane conductance regulator is required for functional expression in the apical plasma membrane. *J Biol Chem* 2000;275:27069–74.
- [312] Carmosino M, Gimenez I, Caplan M, Forbush B. Exon loss accounts for differential sorting of Na-K-Cl cotransporters in polarized epithelial cells. *Mol Biol Cell* 2008;19:4341–51.
- [313] Al-Awqati Q. Plasticity in epithelial polarity of renal intercalated cells: Targeting of the H⁽⁺⁾-ATPase and band 3. *Am J Physiol* 1996;270:C1571–80.
- [314] Alper SL, Stuart-Tilley A, Simmons CF, Brown D, Drenckhahn D. The fodrin-ankyrin cytoskeleton of choroid plexus preferentially colocalizes with apical Na⁺K⁺-ATPase rather than with basolateral anion exchanger AE2. *J Clin Invest* 1994;93:1430–8.
- [315] Gundersen D, Orlowski J, Rodriguez-Boulan E. Apical polarity of Na,K-ATPase in retinal pigment epithelium is linked to a reversal of the ankyrin-fodrin submembrane cytoskeleton. *J Cell Biol* 1991;112:863–72.
- [316] Shiel MJ, Caplan MJ. Developmental regulation of membrane protein sorting in *Drosophila* embryos. *Am J Physiol* 1995;269:C207–16.
- [317] Kornfeld S. Trafficking of lysosomal enzymes. *FASEB J* 1987;1:462–8.
- [318] Maxfield FR. Weak bases and ionophores rapidly and reversibly raise the pH of endocytic vesicles in cultured mouse fibroblasts. *J Cell Biol* 1982;95:676–81.
- [319] Martin GR, Timpl R. Laminin and other basement membrane components. *Annu Rev Cell Biol* 1987;3:57–85.
- [320] Kondor-Koch C, Bravo R, Fuller SD, Cutler D, Garoff H. Exocytotic pathways exist to both the apical and the basolateral cell surface of the polarized epithelial cell MDCK. *Cell* 1985;43:297–306.
- [321] Chung KN, Walter P, Aponte GW, Moore HP. Molecular sorting in the secretory pathway. *Science* 1989;243:192–7.
- [322] Matlin KS. Ammonium chloride slows transport of the influenza virus hemagglutinin but does not cause mis-sorting in a polarized epithelial cell line. *J Biol Chem* 1986;261:15172–8.
- [323] Pearse BM, Robinson MS. Clathrin, adaptors, and sorting. *Annu Rev Cell Biol* 1990;6:151–71.
- [324] Beltzer JP, Spiess M. *In vitro* binding of the asialoglycoprotein receptor to the beta adaptin of plasma membrane coated vesicles. *EMBO J* 1991;10:3735–42.
- [325] Ohno H, Stewart J, Fournier MC, Bosshart H, Rhee I, Miyatake S, et al. Interaction of tyrosine-based sorting signals with clathrin-associated proteins. *Science* 1995;269:1872–5.
- [326] Pearse BM. Receptors compete for adaptors found in plasma membrane coated pits. *EMBO J* 1988;7:3331–6.
- [327] Pearse BM. Assembly of the mannose-6-phosphate receptor into reconstituted clathrin coats. *EMBO J* 1985;4:2457–60.
- [328] Ohno H, Tomemori T, Nakatsu F, Okazaki Y, Aguilar RC, Foelsch H, et al. MulB a novel adaptor medium chain expressed in polarized epithelial cells. *FEBS Lett* 1999;449:215–20.
- [329] Roush DL, Gottardi CJ, Naim HY, Roth MG, Caplan MJ. Tyrosine-based membrane protein sorting signals are differentially interpreted by polarized Madin–Darby canine kidney and LLC-PK1 epithelial cells. *J Biol Chem* 1998;273:26862–9.
- [330] Folsch H, Ohno H, Bonifacino JS, Mellman I. A novel clathrin adaptor complex mediates basolateral targeting in polarized epithelial cells. *Cell* 1999;99:189–98.
- [331] Deborde S, Perret E, Gravotta D, Deora A, Salvarezza S, Schreiner R, et al. Clathrin is a key regulator of basolateral polarity. *Nature* 2008;452:719–23.
- [332] Marks MS, Woodruff L, Ohno H, Bonifacino JS. Protein targeting by tyrosine- and di-leucine-based signals: evidence for distinct saturable components. *J Cell Biol* 1996;135:341–54.
- [333] Rapoport I, Chen YC, Cupers P, Shoelson SE, Kirchhausen T. Dileucine-based sorting signals bind to the beta chain of AP-1 at a site distinct and regulated differently from the tyrosine-based motif-binding site. *EMBO J* 1998;17:2148–55.
- [334] Staub O, Dho S, Henry P, Correa J, Ishikawa T, McGlade J, et al. domains of Nedd4 bind to the proline-rich PY motifs in the epithelial Na⁺ channel deleted in Liddle's syndrome. *EMBO J* 1996;15:2371–80.
- [335] Simons K, Wandinger-Ness A. Polarized sorting in epithelia. *Cell* 1990;62:207–10.
- [336] Skibbens JE, Roth MG, Matlin KS. Differential extractability of influenza virus hemagglutinin during intracellular transport in polarized epithelial cells and nonpolar fibroblasts. *J Cell Biol* 1989;108:821–32.
- [337] Arreaza G, Melkonian KA, LaFevre-Bernt M, Brown DA. Triton X-100-resistant membrane complexes from cultured kidney epithelial cells contain the Src family protein tyrosine kinase p62yes. *J Biol Chem* 1994;269:19123–7.
- [338] Fanning AS, Anderson JM. PDZ domains and the formation of protein networks at the plasma membrane. *Curr Top Microbiol Immunol* 1998;228:209–33.
- [339] Songyang Z, Fanning AS, Fu C, Xu J, Marfartia SM, Chishti AH, et al. Recognition of unique carboxyl-terminal motifs by distinct PDZ domains. *Science* 1997;275:73–7.
- [340] Kim SK. Polarized signaling: basolateral receptor localization in epithelial cells by PDZ-containing proteins. *Curr Opin Cell Biol* 1997;9:853–9.

- [341] Bhat MA, Izaddoost S, Lu Y, Cho KO, Choi KW, et al. Discs Lost, a novel multi-PDZ domain protein, establishes and maintains epithelial polarity. *Cell* 1999;96:833–45.
- [342] Hall RA, Ostedgaard LS, Premont RT, Blitzer JT, Rahman N, Welsh MJ, et al. C-terminal motif found in the beta2-adrenergic receptor, P2Y1 receptor and cystic fibrosis transmembrane conductance regulator determines binding to the Na⁺/H⁺ exchanger regulatory factor family of PDZ proteins. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* 1998;95:8496–501.
- [343] Short DB, Trotter KW, Reczek D, Kreda SM, Bretscher A, Boucher RC, et al. An apical PDZ protein anchors the cystic fibrosis transmembrane conductance regulator to the cytoskeleton. *J Biol Chem* 1998;273:19797–801.
- [344] Wang S, Raab RW, Schatz PJ, Guggino WB, Li M. Peptide binding consensus of the NHE-RF-PDZ1 domain matches the C-terminal sequence of cystic fibrosis transmembrane conductance regulator (CFTR). *FEBS Lett* 1998;427:103–8.
- [345] Ferro-Novick S, Jahn R. Vesicle fusion from yeast to man. *Nature* 1994;370:191–3.
- [346] Ikonen E, Tagaya M, Ullrich O, Montecucco C, Simons K. Different requirements for NSF, SNAP, and Rab proteins in apical and basolateral transport in MDCK cells. *Cell* 1995;81:571–80.
- [347] Inoue T, Nielsen S, Mandon B, Terris J, Kishore BK, et al. SNAP-23 in rat kidney: colocalization with aquaporin-2 in collecting duct vesicles. *Am J Physiol* 1998;275:F752–60.
- [348] Low SH, Chapin SJ, Wimmer C, Whiteheart SW, Komuves LJ, Mostov KE, et al. The SNARE machinery is involved in apical plasma membrane trafficking in MDCK cells. *J Cell Biol* 1998;141:1503–13.
- [349] Guo W, Roth D, Walch-Solimena C, Novick P. The exocyst is an effector for Sec4p, targeting secretory vesicles to sites of exocytosis. *EMBO J* 1999;18:1071–80.
- [350] Grindstaff KK, Yeaman C, Anandasabapathy N, Hsu SC, Rodriguez-Boulan E, Scheller RH, et al. Sec6/8 complex is recruited to cell–cell contacts and specifies transport vesicle delivery to the basal-lateral membrane in epithelial cells. *Cell* 1998;93:731–40.
- [351] Fish EM, Molitoris BA. Alterations in epithelial polarity and the pathogenesis of disease states. *N Engl J Med* 1994;330:1580–8.
- [352] Stein M, Wandinger-Ness A, Roitbak T. Altered trafficking and epithelial cell polarity in disease. *Trends Cell Biol* 2002;12:374–81.
- [353] Calzada MJ, Esteban MA, Feijoo-Cuaresma M, Castellanos MC, Naranjo-Suarez S, Temes E, et al. von Hippel-Lindau tumor suppressor protein regulates the assembly of intercellular junctions in renal cancer cells through hypoxia-inducible factor-independent mechanisms. *Cancer Res* 2006;66:1553–60.
- [354] Baas AF, Kuipers J, van der Wel NN, Batlle E, Koerten HK, Peters PJ, et al. Complete polarization of single intestinal epithelial cells upon activation of LKB1 by STRAD. *Cell* 2004;116:457–66.
- [355] Edelstein CL, Ling H, Schrier RW. The nature of renal cell injury. *Kidney Int* 1997;51:1341–51.
- [356] Oliver J. Correlations of structure and function and mechanisms of recovery in acute tubular necrosis. *Am J Med* 1953;15:535–57.
- [357] Oliver J, Mac DM, Tracy A. The pathogenesis of acute renal failure associated with traumatic and toxic injury; renal ischemia, nephrotoxic damage and the ischemic episode. *J Clin Invest* 1951;30:1307–439.
- [358] Thadhani R, Pascual M, Bonventre JV. Acute renal failure. *N Engl J Med* 1996;334:1448–60.
- [359] Molitoris BA, Chan LK, Shapiro JI, Conger JD, Falk SA. Loss of epithelial polarity: a novel hypothesis for reduced proximal tubule Na⁺ transport following ischemic injury. *J Membr Biol* 1989;107:119–27.
- [360] Spiegel DM, Wilson PD, Molitoris BA. Epithelial polarity following ischemia: a requirement for normal cell function. *Am J Physiol* 1989;256:F430–6.
- [361] Bacallao R, Garfinkel A, Monke S, Zampighi G, Mandel LJ. ATP depletion: a novel method to study junctional properties in epithelial tissues. I. Rearrangement of the actin cytoskeleton. *J Cell Sci* 1994;107(Pt 12):3301–13.
- [362] Golenhofen N, Doctor RB, Bacallao R, Mandel LJ. Actin and villin compartmentation during ATP depletion and recovery in renal cultured cells. *Kidney Int* 1995;48:1837–45.
- [363] Mandel LJ, Doctor RB, Bacallao R. ATP depletion: a novel method to study junctional properties in epithelial tissues. II. Internalization of Na⁺,K⁽⁺⁾-ATPase and E-cadherin. *J Cell Sci* 1994;107(Pt 12):3315–24.
- [364] Bush KT, Tsukamoto T, Nigam SK. Selective degradation of E-cadherin and dissolution of E-cadherin-catenin complexes in epithelial ischemia. *Am J Physiol Renal Physiol* 2000;278:F847–52.
- [365] Gailit J, Colflesh D, Rabiner I, Simone J, Goligorsky MS. Redistribution and dysfunction of integrins in cultured renal epithelial cells exposed to oxidative stress. *Am J Physiol* 1993;264:F149–57.
- [366] Goligorsky MS, Lieberthal W, Racusen L, Simon EE. Integrin receptors in renal tubular epithelium: new insights into pathophysiology of acute renal failure. *Am J Physiol* 1993;264:F1–8.
- [367] Noiri E, Romanov V, Czerwinski G, Gailit J, DiBona GF, Som P, et al. Adhesion molecules and tubular obstruction in acute renal failure. *Ren Fail* 1996;18:513–5.
- [368] Noiri E, Gailit J, Sheth D, Magazine H, Gurrath M, Muller G, et al. Cyclic RGD peptides ameliorate ischemic acute renal failure in rats. *Kidney Int* 1994;46:1050–8.
- [369] Piwon N, Gunther W, Schwake M, Bosl MR, Jentsch TJ. ClC-5 Cl-channel disruption impairs endocytosis in a mouse model for Dent's disease. *Nature* 2000;408:369–73.
- [370] Novarino G, Weinert S, Rickheit G, Jentsch TJ. Endosomal chloride-proton exchange rather than chloride conductance is crucial for renal endocytosis. *Science* 2010;328:1398–401.
- [371] McCrea HJ, De Camilli P. Mutations in phosphoinositide metabolizing enzymes and human disease. *Physiology (Bethesda)* 2009;24:8–16.
- [372] Chapin HC, Caplan MJ. The cell biology of polycystic kidney disease. *J Cell Biol* 2010;191:701–10.
- [373] Grantham JJ. 1992 Homer Smith Award. Fluid secretion, cellular proliferation, and the pathogenesis of renal epithelial cysts. *J Am Soc Nephrol* 1993;3:1841–57.
- [374] Sullivan LP, Wallace DP, Grantham JJ. Epithelial transport in polycystic kidney disease. *Physiol Rev* 1998;78:1165–91.
- [375] Avner ED, Sweeney Jr. WE, Nelson WJ. Abnormal sodium pump distribution during renal tubulogenesis in congenital murine polycystic kidney disease. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* 1992;89:7447–51.
- [376] Wilson PD, Sherwood AC, Palla K, Du J, Watson R, et al. Reversed polarity of Na⁽⁺⁾-K⁽⁺⁾-ATPase: mislocation to apical plasma membranes in polycystic kidney disease epithelia. *Am J Physiol* 1991;260:F420–30.
- [377] Brill SR, Ross KE, Davidow CJ, Ye M, Grantham JJ, et al. Immunolocalization of ion transport proteins in human autosomal dominant polycystic kidney epithelial cells. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* 1996;93:10206–11.
- [378] Freeman TC. Parallel patterns of cell-specific gene expression during enterocyte differentiation and maturation in the small intestine of the rabbit. *J Differentiation* 1995;59:179–92.
- [379] Sullivan LP, Grantham JJ. Mechanisms of fluid secretion by polycystic epithelia. *Kidney Int* 1996;49:1586–91.

This page intentionally left blank



Mechanisms of Ion Transport across Cell Membranes

Luis Reuss and Guillermo A. Altenberg

Department of Cell Physiology and Molecular Biophysics, and Center for Membrane Protein Research,
Texas Tech University Health Sciences Center, Lubbock, Texas, TX, USA

INTRODUCTION

Ion transport by cell membranes serves two important purposes in pluricellular organisms, the maintenance of the volume and composition of the intracellular fluid, and the preservation and regulation of the volume and composition of the extracellular fluid. The first process involves fluxes between the cell interior and its surrounding medium (“homocellular” transport⁹¹), whereas the second one occurs because of transport across epithelial and endothelial cell layers (transcellular or “heterocellular” transport⁹¹). In addition, ion transport across intracellular membranes, which surround the nucleus and cytoplasmic organelles, is essential to generate and maintain ion concentration gradients between those organelles and the cytosol.

Needless to say, the narrowly regulated volume and ionic composition – inorganic cations (Na^+ , K^+ , H^+ , Ca^{2+} , Mg^{2+}) and anions (Cl^- , phosphate, bicarbonate) – of the intracellular fluid is essential for cell survival, and for the cell’s normal functions. A similar argument can be made for the extracellular fluid compartments, that is, whole body balances of water and the ions listed above are essential for the survival, growth, and development of the organism.

Our main focus in this chapter will be on the molecular mechanisms of ion transport by the plasma membranes of cells. The cell membrane is a phospholipid bilayer doped with abundant proteins. This structure is both a barrier between the cytoplasm and the extracellular fluid, and the pathway for ion and water transport between the two compartments. For most ions, the lipid bilayer is the barrier and membrane transport proteins are the pathway for these fluxes.

The Cell Interior and Extracellular Fluid Have Different Ionic Compositions

A crucial property of living cells is their capacity to maintain an internal (intracellular or cytosolic) composition different from that of the surrounding (extracellular) medium. As with all other ionic solutions, the cytosol and the extracellular fluid obey the principle of macroscopic (or bulk) electroneutrality, that is, the sum of cationic and anionic charges are the same in each compartment. As discussed below, there is a microscopic deviation from this principle at the membrane surfaces when there is a difference in electrical potential across the membrane, but the actual differences between anion and cation concentrations are extremely small.

The maintenance of ionic asymmetry between intracellular and extracellular compartments is based on the existence of the cell membrane (or plasma membrane), which separates the cell interior from its surroundings. As shown schematically in [Figure 2.1](#), the membrane is a phospholipid bilayer, with high protein content. Membrane proteins can span the phospholipid bilayer (integral proteins, some of which span the membrane and are known as transmembrane proteins) or can be associated with the membrane surface (peripheral proteins). Transmembrane proteins perform many functions, including translocation of ions, nonelectrolytes, and water across the membrane (transport function, the main theme of this chapter); sensing and early transduction of extracellular events (signaling function); attachment to components of the cytoskeleton, the extracellular matrix or adjacent cells (adhesion function).

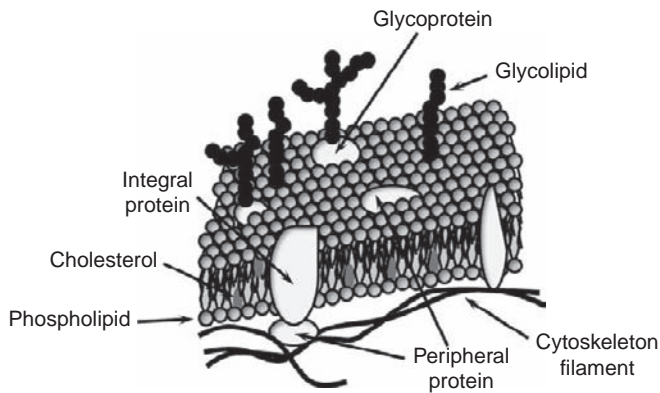


FIGURE 2.1 Structure of the plasma membrane. This two-dimensional representation of the plasma membrane is based on the fluid-mosaic model^{95,96} modified according to recent observations.^{30,59,71,94,112} The membrane is a lipid bilayer that contains integral and peripheral membrane proteins. The bilayer is largely made of phospholipids that have polar heads and hydrophobic tails. The hydrophobic tails face each other, while the polar head groups face the adjacent aqueous solutions (extracellular fluid and cytosol). In addition, the membrane contains glycolipids and cholesterol. The phospholipid compositions of the two leaflets differ; e.g., phosphatidyl inositol is more abundant in the inner leaflet. Additionally, certain areas of the membrane form *lipid rafts* (see text). A small fraction of the membrane surface area is occupied by either strongly-bound proteins (integral membrane proteins), some crossing the membrane one or more times (transmembrane proteins) or loosely attached (peripheral) membrane proteins. Membrane proteins can be glycosylated or have other post-translational modifications (not shown). Some membrane proteins are attached to components of the cytoskeleton or the exoskeleton, directly or via other proteins. Integral membrane proteins can associate forming oligomers, as well as macromolecular complexes.

Two properties of the cell membrane are needed to generate and maintain the intracellular ion composition essential for life: the barrier function and the transport function. This distinction is didactically convenient, although both functions are clearly linked. By the barrier function, the cell membrane prevents the flux of certain molecules; by the transport function, it translocates certain molecules. These two functions bring about a steady-state in which cell volume and composition are kept constant and appropriate for cell survival. Relative to the extracellular fluid, some substances are maintained at high concentrations (e.g., K^+ and ATP), whereas others are maintained at low concentrations (e.g., Ca^{2+} and Cl^-) inside the cell.

The cell interior is not homogeneous, but is rather a complex medium including a highly structured cytoplasm (cytosol and cytoskeleton) and numerous organelles. The latter are separated from the cytosol by their membranes. Exchanges between each organelle and the cytosol occur by mechanisms similar to those present in the plasma membrane. In this chapter, we will not address organelle membrane function.

The Plasma Membrane: Structure Related to Function

The plasma membrane, which is 3–8 nm thick, is largely formed by phospholipids, organized in a bilayer, and proteins. The main phospholipids are phosphatidylcholine and phosphatidylethanolamine, with lower levels of phosphatidylinositol, phosphatidylserine, and phosphatidylglycerol, and sterols (cholesterol, ergosterol, zymosterol).^{6,63} The precise proportions vary among cells. Hydrophobic or amphipathic proteins are essential components of biological membranes. In most membranes, the w/w protein:lipid ratio is *ca.* 1, and therefore a membrane protein of *ca.* 40 kDa is surrounded by 50–55 lipid molecules.

Experimental work during the last two or three decades has ruled out the “fluid-mosaic” (Singer and Nicolson) model of membrane structure.^{95,96} In this model, biological membranes are considered two-dimensional viscous phospholipid bilayers in which integral membrane proteins are randomly distributed and free to rotate and diffuse laterally. A main objection is the demonstration of asymmetry in the lipid composition of the membrane.⁷¹ The current view is that the plasma membrane is a highly-organized and asymmetric structure composed of lipids and proteins.³⁰ There are lateral differences in lipid composition within a monolayer; sphingolipids, sterols, and phosphatidylcholine predominate on the extracellular leaflet, whereas the cytoplasmic leaflet is enriched in phosphatidylinositol, phosphatidylethanolamine, phosphatidylserine, and phosphatidic acid, which results in a negative charge that facilitates binding of peripheral and transmembrane proteins.⁷¹ In addition, many membrane proteins cluster with others in microdomains, in which the lipid composition may differ from that of the bulk bilayer. These clusters are maintained by intramembrane lipid–lipid, protein–protein, and protein–lipid interactions, as well as interactions with intracellular molecules (cytoskeletal proteins) and extracellular components (extracellular matrix proteins and membrane proteins of adjacent cells). It is clear that the two monolayers also differ in composition. Lipid rafts are microdomains in the submicron range in which cholesterol and sphingolipids are enriched in the external leaflet, and cholesterol and phospholipids with saturated fatty acids in the internal leaflet of the plasma membrane. The surrounding bilayer is abundant in unsaturated fatty acids and contains more fluid than that in the raft.⁵⁹ Lipid rafts exclude certain proteins and organize others in specific oligomeric structures.⁹⁴ Rapid changes in composition and location in the membrane are essential for the role that lipid rafts play in signaling processes (e.g., receptor tyrosine kinases).

Phospholipids in the plasma membrane are not just a barrier and a “solvent” for membrane proteins, but play important roles in signaling processes. Inositol-1,4,5-triphosphate, diacylglycerol, and phosphatidylinositol-3,4,5-triphosphate (derived from phosphatidylinositol) are good examples.^{9,72,73} Phosphatidylinositol 4,5-bisphosphate (PIP₂) exerts regulatory effects on a number of ion channels and other transport proteins. Its effects can be stimulatory or inhibitory and appear to require PIP₂ binding.^{49,102} Other signaling molecules originating from plasma membrane phospholipids are arachidonic and docosahexaenoic acids, which are generated from phosphatidylethanolamine, phosphatidylcholine, and phosphatidylinositol by the action of phospholipase A₂. Certainly, being a dielectric is not the only function of the phospholipid moiety of the cell membrane.

This new notion of the structure of the plasma membrane¹¹² is based on results of biophysical studies, including fluorescence recovery after photo-bleaching, single-particle tracking techniques, optical trapping by laser tweezers, and fluorescence correlation spectroscopy. These methods, applied to cell membranes, have yielded quantitative dynamic information on the distribution, mobility, and compartmentalization of membrane proteins.¹¹² Biochemical, molecular, and physiological studies indicate that membrane transport proteins are not randomly distributed, but that they undergo homo- and hetero-associations,⁵⁹ and that these associations may have functional significance. A case in point is the proposed proximity between plasma membrane Ca²⁺ channels and Ca²⁺-sensitive proteins, including Ca²⁺-activated channels: Ca²⁺ entry results in a large, but highly localized, increase in intracellular [Ca²⁺], because of effective cytosolic buffering, and thus its signaling effects may be quite local.⁷⁰

In summary, the current view of the structure of the plasma membrane is that of a compartmentalized two-dimensional structure, mosaic-like, with less fluidity than proposed by the Singer–Nicolson model. The phospholipids have signaling functions in addition to previously recognized ones. The mobility of membrane proteins may be restricted by the structure of the lipid domain, interactions with cytoskeletal proteins or other cytoplasmic components, and/or homo- and hetero-associations with other integral membrane proteins. Future studies of membrane transport proteins along these lines are likely to reveal important aspects of their function and regulation in health and disease (see Chapter 14).

The Plasma Membrane is Selectively Permeable

The barrier and transport functions of the plasma membrane are determined by its composition, mostly regarding lipids and integral transmembrane proteins

(for membrane structure, see references^{59,95,96} and¹¹²; for a review of membrane proteins, see¹⁰³). When the membrane is *permeable* to a specific molecule, then that molecule can cross the membrane. *Permeability* (cm s⁻¹) is a property of a specific membrane for a specific molecule. The amount of substance that crosses the membrane per unit of time and membrane area is the *flux*. Using radioactive techniques, unidirectional fluxes can be measured (e.g., in case of a cell, influx and efflux); the *net flux* is the difference between the two unidirectional fluxes. A finite net flux denotes the presence of either a net driving force across the membrane or an active process.

Permeation of a specific molecule can take place through the lipid phase (i.e., *solubility diffusion*) and/or through membrane proteins (i.e., *mediated transport*). Solubility diffusion always results in equilibrating transport, dissipating differences in concentration or electrochemical potential (see the section “Diffusion and Electrodiffusion,” below). In contrast, mediated transport can either dissipate or generate differences in chemical or electrochemical potentials across the membrane. An example of mediated transport is the operation of the sodium pump, the Na⁺,K⁺-ATPase.

The lipid phase of the plasma membrane is hydrophobic, and therefore has high permeability for lipophilic molecules and low permeability for hydrophilic molecules. Thus, a protein-free phospholipid membrane has a high permeability for nonpolar small molecules such as O₂ and CO₂, a much lower permeability for uncharged small polar substances such as water, urea, and glycerol, and an extremely low permeability for ions and larger uncharged polar molecules, such as glucose. Most molecules are measurably permeable across plasma membranes. However, the diffusive permeability coefficients range over several orders of magnitude. It is thought that hydrophilic molecules permeate the membrane bilayer to some extent, because the thermal motion of the phospholipid molecules causes transient kinks in the bilayer structure.

Transport proteins can be classified in four groups, namely pores, channels, carriers (also referred to as transporters), and pumps (see next section). The expression of some transport proteins can be specific to tissue, cell, and sometimes membrane domain. Others are expressed in most, if not all, cell membranes. The functional significance of transport proteins is apparent in two realms. Some are primarily related to the establishment and maintenance of cellular composition (intracellular “homeostasis”), such as the Na⁺,K⁺-ATPase and K⁺ channels in most animal cells. Others are primarily related to specific cell functions, such as excitability (e.g., the tetrodotoxin-sensitive, voltage-activated Na⁺ channel in nerve and muscle), and transepithelial Na⁺ transport (e.g., the

amiloride-sensitive, voltage-insensitive Na^+ channel in the apical membrane of certain epithelial cells).

A *pore* is an aqueous communication between both sides of the membrane, accessible to both sides at all times – that is, it is always “open” (permeable). A *channel* is also an aqueous communication between the two sides of the membrane, but it opens and closes stochastically by changes in conformation called *gating*; when open, a channel is accessible from both sides of the membrane, when closed, it is impermeable. A *carrier* is a membrane transport protein whose permeation pathway is not simultaneously accessible to both sides of the membrane, but to one side at a time; changes in conformation change the orientation of the carrier, moving the transported ion to the other side; an appropriate simplified description is that a carrier has two gates and they are never open at the same time. Finally, a *pump* has the properties of a carrier, but in addition it is coupled to a metabolic energy source, in most cases hydrolysis of ATP.

MECHANISMS OF ION TRANSPORT

Ion Transport can be Active or Passive

The definitions of active and passive transport are thermodynamic. Passive transport occurs in the direction expected for the existing driving force, which in the case of ions involves the chemical gradient (given by the difference in concentration between the two sides of the membrane) and the electrical gradient (given by the transmembrane electrical potential difference or membrane voltage). In other words, passive transport is energetically downhill. In contrast, active transport takes place in the absence of or against the prevailing electrochemical gradient. In other words, active transport is energetically uphill, and therefore requires an energy input. Depending on the origin of this energy, one can distinguish two types of active transport.

Primary active transport is characterized by the direct use of metabolic energy, supplied by light, redox potential or ATP hydrolysis. In most cases of plasma membrane primary active transport in eukaryotic organisms, the energy is provided by the hydrolysis of ATP, a process catalyzed by the same molecule that performs the transport. Hence, in this case the transporter is also an ATP hydrolase (ATPase). Transporters responsible for primary active transport are referred to as pumps. In plasma membranes of most animal cells there can be expression of one or more of four ion-transporting ATPases. These are the Na^+/K^+ -ATPase, H^+ -ATPase, H^+/K^+ -ATPase, and Ca^{2+} -ATPase.

Secondary active transport is characterized by the indirect use of metabolic energy. The energy stored in the

electrochemical gradient of one substrate is utilized to transport actively another species (ion or molecule). In animal cells, including those from epithelia, secondary active transport is most frequently linked to Na^+ transport. The Na^+/K^+ -ATPase establishes an electrochemical potential gradient for Na^+ across the plasma membrane, which includes chemical (high extracellular and low intracellular $[\text{Na}^+]$) and electrical components (cell electrically negative to the extracellular compartment), both contributing to a net driving force favoring Na^+ entry into the cell. This gradient is then utilized by carriers to actively transport other substrates, by coupling their translocation to that of Na^+ at the molecular level.

Depending on the directions of the fluxes, there are two kinds of secondary active transport: One is *co-transport* (or *symport*) in which the substrates move in the same direction, such as downhill for Na^+ and uphill for the co-transported substrate (e.g., Na^+ -glucose co-transport). The other one is *countertransport* (also *antiport* or *exchange*), in which the fluxes are in opposite directions (e.g., Na^+/H^+ exchange). In most instances, secondary active transport involves only two species (Na^+ and another substrate), but in some cases there are three: an example is the $\text{Na}^+/\text{K}^+/\text{2Cl}^-$ co-transporter, an electro-neutral symporter that is expressed principally in epithelial cells. This transporter accounts for uphill Cl^- uptake, a step necessary for Cl^- absorption (e.g., in the apical membrane of cells of the thick ascending limb of the loop of Henle) or Cl^- secretion (e.g., in the basolateral membrane of crypt cells in the intestine and epithelial cells in the airway). For quantitative analyses of membrane transport processes, see Läuger,⁶⁴ Macey and Moura,⁶⁷ and Stein.⁹⁹

Active and Passive Transport Processes can be Evaluated by Considering Direction of Electrochemical Potential Difference (Driving Force)

As stated above, passive transport is energetically downhill, driven by the pre-existing driving force; this force depends on the chemical or electrochemical gradient, for uncharged and charged solutes, respectively. Under isothermal conditions the driving force encompasses differences in concentration, electrical potential, and/or pressure across the membrane. Under these conditions, the electrochemical potential difference ($\Delta\bar{\mu}_j$) for the j th ion is given by Eq. (2.1):

$$\Delta\bar{\mu}_j = z_j V_m F + RT \ln \left(\frac{C_j^i}{C_j^o} \right) + \Delta P \bar{V}_j \quad (2.1)$$

where z is the valence, V_m is the membrane voltage, F is the Faraday constant, R is the gas constant, T is the absolute temperature, C is the concentration, i and o refer to

the two sides of the membrane (inside and outside, respectively), ΔP is the transmembrane hydrostatic pressure difference, and \bar{V}_j is the ion's partial molar volume. The electrochemical potential has the three components defined above, given by the three terms on the right side of the equation. Across animal cell membranes, steady-state hydrostatic or osmotic pressure differences are small or nil (see Chapter 4), and therefore the third term of Eq. (2.1) is eliminated, yielding:

$$\Delta\bar{\mu}_j = z_j V_m F + RT \ln \left(\frac{C_j^i}{C_j^o} \right) \quad (2.2)$$

This equation is used to evaluate the driving force for ion transport under isobaric conditions. In the case of nonelectrolytes, $z = 0$ and the first term of Eq. (2.2) can also be eliminated, yielding:

$$\Delta\mu_j = RT \ln \left(\frac{C_j^i}{C_j^o} \right) \quad (2.3)$$

where $\Delta\mu_j$ denotes the chemical potential difference. This equation describes the driving force for nonelectrolyte transport.

From Eq. (2.2) (under isobaric and isothermal conditions), Ussing¹¹¹ derived the flux-ratio equation, a fundamental expression which provides a thermodynamic test for active or passive transport:

$$J_{in}/J_{out} = (C_i/C_o) \exp(zV_m F/RT) \quad (2.4)$$

where J is flux (the subscripts denote influx and efflux, respectively). The test proceeds as follows: the ratio of unidirectional fluxes (J_{in}/J_{out}) is determined experimentally, and the driving forces are measured; if the ratio deviates from the prediction given by Eq. (2.4), which evaluates the passive driving forces, then active transport is suspected. Deviations from the flux-ratio equation can also result from the presence of exchange diffusion and single-file diffusion, as discussed by Schultz.⁹⁰

Pathways and Mechanisms of Passive Transport

Passive transport can be *via* the lipid bilayer (solubility diffusion) or *via* transmembrane proteins (mediated). Solubility diffusion is a permeation process that involves the movement of a molecule dissolved in the aqueous solution bathing one side of the membrane into the lipid phase of the membrane, then across the membrane, and then from the membrane lipid into the solution bathing the opposite side. Clearly, two processes are involved. The first one ("solubility") governs the fluxes at the solution–membrane interface, and depends on the relative solubility of the molecule in lipid and water, which can be quantified by the oil–water partition coefficient, β , a coefficient equal to the

ratio of the molecule's steady-state concentrations in lipid and water. The second process ("diffusion") governs the solute translocation within the membrane lipid, which depends largely on the mass and shape of solute molecules. The lipid solubility of the molecule is the main factor determining its permeability via the lipid moiety of the membrane.

Mediated transport is the mode of transmembrane transport of substances with very low solubility in phospholipids, that is, charged and polar substances. The transport proteins provide a hydrophilic path across the membrane, through which the solute permeates or a narrow pore in which amino acid charges replace the water molecules surrounding the ion or polar molecule in free solution.

Diffusion and Electrodiffusion

Diffusion and electrodiffusion are the main processes of passive solute transport across homogeneous phases (e.g., lipid membranes or aqueous pores) by independent motion of the solute molecules. Diffusion applies to uncharged particles and electrodiffusion to ions. Although diffusion does not strictly apply to ion transport, its analysis is simpler and helps in understanding electrodiffusion.

Diffusion of a solute in aqueous solution is the result of the random thermal motion of solute molecules. In the absence of convection, if there are differences in concentration between different sectors of the solution, then random solute motion will tend to make its distribution homogeneous (equilibrating transport). All solute particles move randomly at uniform average velocities, dependent on the solution temperature. Hence, more particles will tend to move from regions of high concentration to sectors of low concentration than in the opposite direction, simply because there are more particles per unit volume in the high concentration regions. In other words, differences in concentration cause unequal unidirectional fluxes in a regime of diffusion because of differences in the number of particles flowing in each direction per unit of time, not because of different velocities of individual particles flowing in one direction or the other. In diffusion, the molecules move independently of each other and of other particles present in the solution, that is, there is no flux coupling. This is the *independence principle*.

Diffusion of a nonelectrolyte in solution is described by Fick's first law³⁴:

$$J_s = -D_s \frac{dC_s}{dx} \quad (2.5)$$

where J_s is the solute flux (moles $\text{cm}^2 \text{sec}^{-1}$), D_s is the solute diffusion coefficient ($\text{cm}^2 \text{sec}^{-1}$) and dC_s/dx is the concentration gradient. The negative sign denotes the direction of the flux.

Fick's second law of diffusion³⁴ considers the time course of the process:

$$\frac{dC}{dt} = D_s \frac{d^2 C_s}{dx^2} \quad (2.6)$$

where dC/dt is the rate of change in solute concentration, and x denotes distance.

The average time required by diffusing particles to cover a given distance is inversely proportional to the diffusion coefficient, and directly proportional to the square of the traveled distance. Einstein approximated the second law of diffusion with $\lambda = (D_s t)^{1/2}$, where λ is the traveled distance in the x -axis. The dependence of t on the square of the distance makes diffusion a very slow transport process for long distances. For a typical $D_s = 10^{-5} \text{ cm}^2 \text{ sec}^{-1}$, it takes 1 millisecond for the solute to diffuse 1 μm , but it takes 1000 seconds (*ca.* 16.7 minutes) to diffuse 1 mm. Convective flow (see Chapter 9) is a much more effective mass transport mechanism for long distances.

Now we consider a thin lipid membrane of thickness δ_m separating two aqueous compartments (Figure 2.2). The solutions on both sides are well stirred, so that the solute concentrations are homogeneous in both. Inserting the solute partition coefficient (β_s) in Eq. (2.5) (β_s denotes lipid solubility relative to water

solubility), we obtain the following expression for the solute flux:

$$J_s = -\frac{D_s \beta_s}{\delta_m} \Delta C_s \quad (2.7)$$

where ΔC_s is the solute concentration difference between the two solutions. Defining the solute permeability (P_s) as $P_s = D_s \beta_s / \delta_m$, Eq. (2.7) reduces to:

$$J_s = -P_s \Delta C_s \quad (2.8)$$

The diffusive permeability coefficient of the membrane relates the flux to the driving force and denotes the ease with which the membrane permits mass transfer of a particular species. Its units are cm s^{-1} , those of velocity. In the simple case of a nonelectrolyte, under isothermal and isobaric conditions, the permeability (P) of solute s is given by a rearrangement of Eq. (2.8): $P_s = J_s / \Delta C_s$. This is the phenomenological, experimentally determined permeability, calculated by dividing the steady-state solute flux by the difference between the solute concentrations of well-stirred bathing solutions. The other definition of diffusive permeability is mechanistic, and considers the factors involved in solubility diffusion, D_s , β_s , and δ_m , as described above.

The preceding discussion considers the specific case of solubility diffusion, but the phenomenological definition of permeability can be applied in principle to any transport mechanism. Of course, its interpretation varies. An important case is that of the permeation of certain hydrophilic nonelectrolytes through aqueous pores in the membrane. If the lipid bilayer is impermeable to the solute, then diffusive transport is entirely via the pores. The permeable area of this membrane (S_p) is only a fraction of the total membrane area, given (for 1 cm^2 of membrane) by $S_p = n\pi r^2$, where n is the density of homogeneous pores of radius r . The partition coefficient is unity (the solute is dissolved in water both inside and outside of the pore), and is hence eliminated from the equation:

$$P_s = n\pi r^2 D_s / L \quad (2.9)$$

where L is the pore length (nearly equivalent to membrane thickness).

Electrodiffusion

Electrodiffusion is the main mechanism of passive transport of ions in homogeneous media, that is, bulk aqueous solution or relatively large water-filled pores. Electrodiffusive transmembrane ion transport is a mediated transport process, but it is better discussed with diffusion for continuity. In large-diameter pores, electrodiffusion theory explains ion permeation very well. In ion channels, which have smaller diameter and are highly selective, there are significant interactions between the

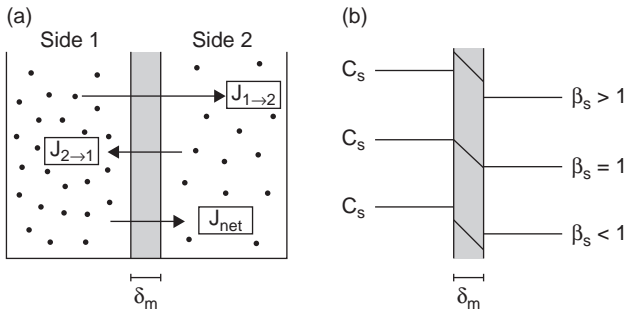


FIGURE 2.2 Diffusion across a membrane. (a) A membrane separates two aqueous solutions (1 and 2). The dots represent molecules of a solute to which the membrane is permeable; the solute concentration (C_s) is greater in solution 1. Solute molecules move randomly in each solution and collide with the membrane with a probability proportional to the concentration. Solutes collide, dissolve in, and diffuse across the membrane. The unidirectional fluxes ($J_{1 \rightarrow 2}$ and $J_{2 \rightarrow 1}$) are proportional to the solute concentrations in sides 1 and 2, respectively; the net flux (J_{net}) is proportional to the concentration difference. The concentration difference does not accelerate the molecules, and hence it is not a force, although it is usually referred to as the *chemical driving force*. Diffusion is a passive, equilibrating transport, i.e., net transport ceases when the concentrations on both sides of the membrane are equal. (b) Lines denote solute concentration profiles in the solutions and the membrane depending on the partition coefficient (β_s). When $\beta_s = 1$, solute concentration in the membrane boundaries are identical to those in the adjacent solutions; concentrations in the membrane are greater or smaller than those in the adjacent solution if β_s is greater or smaller than unity, respectively. The membrane thickness is denoted by δ_m .

ions and the permeation pathway. For this reason, simple electrodiffusion theory is not entirely applicable to ion channels, but is nevertheless a useful approximation. For ion transport across a membrane, two factors determine the flux: the chemical potential difference (difference in concentration across the membrane) and the electrical potential difference (membrane voltage). The net ion flux (J_i) is given by the Nernst–Planck equation (see ⁵⁰). If a constant electrical field is assumed in the membrane and other assumptions are made, the Nernst–Planck equation can be solved, yielding the Goldman–Hodgkin–Katz (GHK) equation ^{41,51}:

$$J_i = -P_i \frac{z_i V_m F}{RT} \left[\frac{C_i^o - C_i^i \exp(V_m F/RT)}{1 - \exp(V_m F/RT)} \right] \quad (2.10)$$

where R , T , z , and F have their usual meanings, P is permeability, V_m is membrane voltage, C is concentration, the subscript i denotes the i th ion, and the superscripts i and o denote the two sides of the membrane.

Under zero current conditions, the GHK flux equation yields the membrane voltage as a function of the permeabilities and concentrations of all permeant ions. For the case of three monovalent permeant ions (Na^+ , K^+ , and Cl^-), the equation (GHK voltage equation) is:

$$V_m = -\frac{RT}{F} \ln \frac{P_{\text{Na}}[\text{Na}^+]_i + P_{\text{K}}[\text{K}^+]_i + P_{\text{Cl}}[\text{Cl}^-]_o}{P_{\text{Na}}[\text{Na}^+]_o + P_{\text{K}}[\text{K}^+]_o + P_{\text{Cl}}[\text{Cl}^-]_i} \quad (2.11)$$

where the brackets denote concentrations. Note that if the fraction including permeability coefficients and ion concentrations is inverted, then the sign of the right side of the equation is also inverted. We prefer the notation given here, because it gives the intracellular potential minus the extracellular potential, the convention used in electrophysiology. This also applies to the Nernst equation below.

Note that if only one ion is permeable, e.g., if P_{Na} and P_{Cl} are 0 in Eq. (2.11), then the membrane voltage becomes equal to the equilibrium potential for that ion, in this example K^+ . The equilibrium potential is given by the Nernst equation ⁸¹:

$$V_m = -\frac{RT}{F} \ln \frac{[\text{K}^+]_i}{[\text{K}^+]_o} \quad (2.12)$$

Under these conditions, the two compartments separated by the membrane are at a *steady-state* (the amounts of K^+ on each side remain constant with time), but also at *equilibrium*, which means that the net driving force for K^+ is zero, and hence the unidirectional fluxes are equal (Figure 2.3). In the case of cells, one frequently observes a steady-state K^+ distribution without equilibrium; the net efflux through channels is exactly balanced by influx via the Na^+, K^+ -ATPase.

Another interesting point is that the Nernst equation indicates that if only one ion is permeable, then the

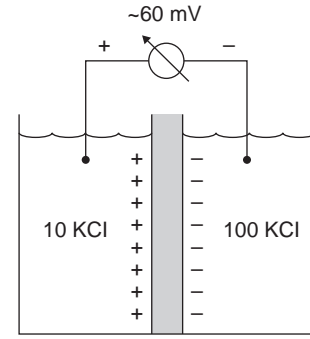


FIGURE 2.3 **Electrochemical equilibrium.** A membrane permeable to K^+ and impermeable to Cl^- separates two KCl solutions of 10 mM and 100 mM concentrations, respectively. Because of the difference in concentrations, there is a chemical driving force for K^+ and Cl^- fluxes from right to left. While the impermeant Cl^- cannot move, the permeant K^+ moves across the membrane, and in doing so creates a difference in electrical potential across the membrane. The membrane becomes electrically charged by a tiny excess of K^+ on the left, and a tiny excess of Cl^- on the right. This difference in electrical potential (the *transmembrane voltage*) opposes further K^+ flux, and a state is reached at which the chemical driving force and the electrical driving force for K^+ movement are equal and opposite. This condition, described by the Nernst equation (Eq. (2.12)), denotes electrochemical equilibrium.

membrane voltage is determined by the concentration ratio for that ion, not its absolute concentrations. In addition, the membrane voltage is independent of the absolute value of the ion permeability. As shown by the GHK voltage equation, in the case of a membrane permeable to more than one ion, the membrane voltage depends on the absolute concentrations and permeability coefficients of all permeant ions. The Nernst equation can be derived more directly from the definitions of electrochemical potential (Eq. (2.1)) and equilibrium ($\Delta\bar{\mu}_i = 0$).

The essential points concerning electrodiffusion are that ion fluxes across membranes are determined by both permeability and driving force, and that the driving force has chemical and electrical components. Hence, these three elements must be known to predict the direction and magnitude of the flux. For example, knowledge of the K^+ concentrations inside and outside a cell is insufficient to decide whether the ion is at equilibrium across the membrane or whether there is a passive driving force inwardly or outwardly directed. To establish this simple point, it is necessary to know the membrane voltage. However, knowledge of the electrochemical gradient is insufficient to predict the magnitude of the K^+ flux expected for this gradient; the K^+ permeability of the membrane must also be known.

Mediated Transport

This expression means that translocation across the membrane is not via the lipid bilayer, but via membrane

transport proteins: pores, channels, carriers or pumps. Mediated transport is the process by which ions and polar nonelectrolytes undergo passive transport across the cell membrane. Hence, this mechanism is complementary to that provided by solubility diffusion, in that it is specialized for hydrophilic solutes, whereas solubility diffusion is more effective for lipophilic solutes. For certain solutes, both mechanisms may operate. Even for solutes with very low permeability across the phospholipid moiety of the membrane, a significant contribution of the diffusive flux may exist because of the large fractional area covered by phospholipids, in particular if there is also a low level of expression of the relevant transporters.

In mediated transport, specialized proteins spanning the membrane provide an aqueous environment that allows for the transmembrane flux of particles that are virtually insoluble in phospholipids. Recent advances have permitted the molecular identification of many of these proteins, as well as the genes that encode them. In addition to providing an aqueous environment for solute translocation, these molecules may undergo conformational changes during or related to the substrate translocation. The transport proteins underlying mediated transport can be classified in four groups: pores; channels; carriers; and pumps.

Thermodynamics of Mediated Passive Transport

Pores, channels, and carriers are membrane transport proteins that can only perform *overall* passive transport, meaning that the total energy employed in the transport is equal to or less than the energy available in the electrochemical gradients (see “Secondary Active Transport” section below). Carriers and channels do not use a metabolic energy supply for solute translocation. Some channels are activated by ATP binding and hydrolysis, but once they become permeable, ion translocation is passive and does not use metabolic energy. Some carriers are able to transport more than one solute in the same cycle. In this case, the energy stored in the electrochemical gradient for one of these solutes (accessory) can be employed for uphill transport of another (principal) solute, a process known as secondary active transport. Nevertheless, the total energy change is dissipative, that is, the energy stored in the accessory solute’s electrochemical gradient is always greater than that used to actively transport the principal solute.

Kinetics of Mediated Passive Transport

The dependence of the transport rates on solute concentration are different in solubility diffusion and carrier-mediated transport. As shown in Figure 2.4, in diffusion the flux increases linearly with the

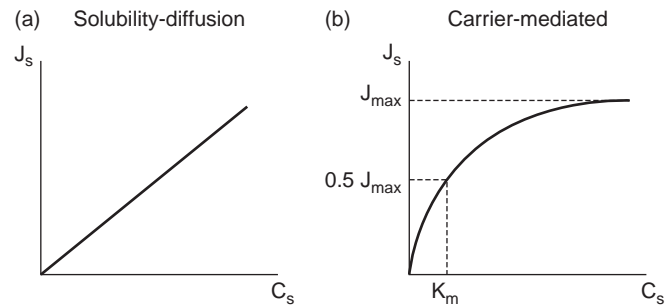


FIGURE 2.4 Kinetics of diffusion and carrier-mediated transport. Both graphs depict solute flux (J_s) as a function of solute concentration (C_s). In (a), the mechanism of translocation across the membrane is diffusion, which does not involve chemical reactions between solute and membrane. In (b), the mechanism of translocation is mediated (i.e., it involves a transport protein in the membrane). In (a), the flux is linear with the concentration, whereas in (b) it saturates, because of occupation of a finite number of sites by a solute that moves at a finite velocity. In the simplest case, the relationship in (b) is described by the Michaelis–Menten equation (Eq. (2.13)).

concentration, whereas in carrier-mediated transport it saturates. This is explained because transport occurs via a finite number of carrier molecules that can also operate at a finite rate. The simplest case of carrier-mediated transport can be described by the Michaelis–Menten equation; the two kinetic parameters are the maximum flux (J_{max}) and K_m , the concentration at which the flux is half-maximal (see Figure 2.4):

$$J_s = -\frac{C_s J_{max}}{C_s + K_m} \quad (2.13)$$

where J_s is the solute flux, and C_s is its concentration. For a detailed description of this, and more complex kinetic processes, see Segel.⁹²

Modes of Coupled Transport

Coupled transport denotes the linked translocation of two or more species (ions and/or molecules) through a barrier. One can distinguish two coupling modes. *Molecular* coupling denotes carrier- or pump-mediated transport of more than one species by the same molecule. Examples shown in Figure 2.5a are the Na^+ and glucose fluxes via the Na^+ -glucose co-transporter, and the Na^+ and K^+ fluxes via the Na^+K^+ -ATPase. In addition, there is *thermodynamic* coupling. In this case, the fluxes of two or more species occur through different molecules, but are related to each other by electrochemical driving forces. For example, transepithelial Na^+ transport via cell membranes (apical membrane Na^+ channel in series with basolateral membrane Na^+ pump) can produce a transepithelial electrical potential difference responsible for a passive Cl^- flux via the intercellular (junctional) pathway. In this instance, the

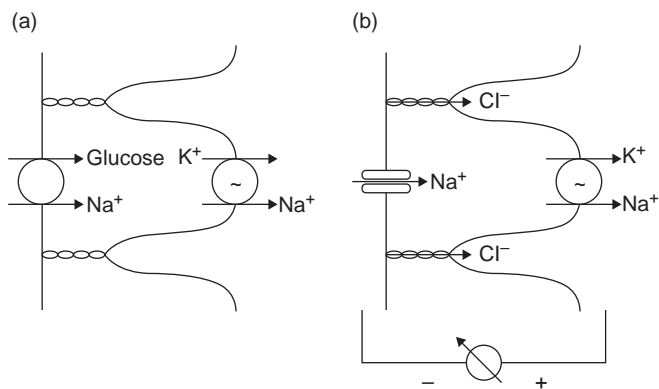


FIGURE 2.5 Modes of coupled transport. (a) Molecular coupling: glucose-absorbing epithelial cell (e.g., renal proximal tubule). Two cases of molecular coupling are depicted: the Na^+ -glucose symporter (SGLT) at the apical membrane, and the Na^+ , K^+ -ATPase at the basolateral membrane. In both instances, the transport of two substrates occurs obligatorily in the same transport molecule. (b) Thermodynamic coupling: the epithelial cell depicted absorbs Na^+ by an electrogenic process that generates a lumen-negative transepithelial voltage. This voltage drives a paracellular, electrodiffusive Cl^- flux. The Na^+ and Cl^- fluxes occur via different pathways, and are linked by the driving force, not by binding to the same molecule.

coupling is not obligatory (if the potential difference is abolished, Cl^- transport ceases while Na^+ transport continues), and does not involve the Na^+ transport molecules. Instead, it corresponds to the parallel operation of two transporters linked by a driving force (Figure 2.5b). This apparently simple point has been a source of confusion in the transport literature (in particular of epithelial cells), where on occasion it has been incorrectly implied that all coupling is molecular.

Pathways and Mechanisms of Active Transport

Primary Active Transport

Primary active transport occurs in the absence of or against the existing electrochemical gradient, and is powered by metabolic energy, such as that originated by the exergonic hydrolysis of ATP (Figure 2.6). Ion pumps are the only molecules capable of performing primary active transport. Most ion pumps of interest to us are transport ATPases, bifunctional molecules that hydrolyze ATP and perform the translocation of the substrate against the prevailing electrochemical gradient. The Na^+ , K^+ -ATPase⁸⁵, Na^+ - K^+ pump or Na^+ pump, was the first enzyme demonstrated to be an active ion transporter (reviewed in^{97,98}). It is likely that the energy-consuming steps are the conformational changes of the pump protein required for the substrate translocation, that is, for making the substrate first inaccessible to the *cis* side, and then accessible to the *trans* side of the membrane.

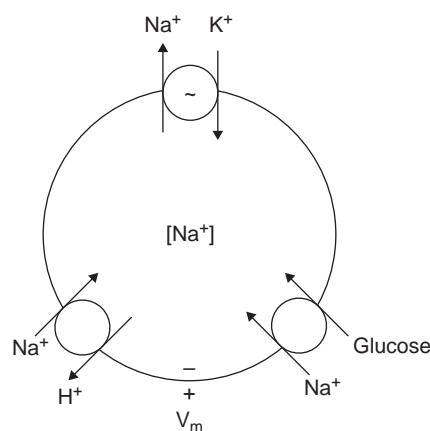


FIGURE 2.6 Active transport. The diagram represents a cell expressing three membrane transporters. Top: Primary-active transport of Na^+ and K^+ via the Na^+ , K^+ -ATPase. The energy for active transport is provided by the hydrolysis of ATP. The flux coupling is $3\text{Na}^+ : 2\text{K}^+$ per ATP molecule hydrolyzed. Bottom: Two mechanisms of secondary active transport. In both cases, the Na^+ electrochemical gradient (oriented inwards) is the driving force for the uphill movement of the other solute (glucose or H^+). On the right, Na^+ -glucose co-transport via SGLT, the stoichiometry (Na^+ :glucose) is 1:1 (SGLT2) or 2:1 (SGLT1). On the left, Na^+ - H^+ exchange via NHE; the stoichiometry is 1:1. Note that the Na^+ driving forces operative in the two cases are different. Since Na^+ - H^+ exchange is electroneutral, the driving force depends only on the difference in Na^+ concentrations. Since Na^+ -glucose co-transport is electrogenic the driving force involves both the Na^+ chemical gradient and the membrane voltage. For a quantitative analysis, see text.

Secondary Active Transport

Secondary active transport is characterized by the indirect use of metabolic energy. The electrochemical gradient drives a downhill substrate flux, and part of this energy is utilized for the uphill flux of another substrate (Figure 2.6). The coupling between the two fluxes occurs in the same transport protein, and therefore there is molecular coupling.

In animal cells, secondary active transport is most frequently linked to Na^+ transport. The Na^+ , K^+ -ATPase establishes an electrochemical potential gradient for Na^+ across the plasma membrane, which includes a chemical (higher extracellular $[\text{Na}^+]$) and an electrical component (cell electrically negative to the extracellular compartment), both contributing to a net driving force (electrochemical gradient) favoring Na^+ entry into the cell. This energy is utilized to transport other substrates by coupling translocation to that of Na^+ at the molecular level.

Depending on the directions of the fluxes, there are two kinds of secondary active transport: *co-transport* (or *symport*), in which the substrates move in the same direction, such as downhill for Na^+ and uphill for the co-transported substrate (e.g., glucose); and *counter-transport* (also *antiport* or *exchange*) in which the fluxes are in opposite directions. Secondary active transport

may involve two substrates (Na^+ and another substrate) or more (e.g., the $\text{Na}^+\text{-K}^+\text{-2Cl}^-$ co-transporter). Sodium-glucose co-transport was the first secondary active transport mechanism studied experimentally, giving rise to the *Na⁺ gradient hypothesis*.¹⁶

Transport by Na^+ -glucose co-transporters and $\text{Na}^+\text{-Ca}^{2+}$ exchangers is electrogenic, that is, there is net translocation of charge across the membrane in each cycle. The concentration ratios (intracellular/extracellular) for glucose and Ca^{2+} , respectively, depend on both the Na^+ concentration ratio and the membrane voltage (V_m). The equation describing the maximum substrate concentration ratio that can be obtained by co-transport is:

$$\frac{S_i}{S_o} = \left[\frac{A_o}{A_i} \right]^n \exp\left(\frac{-nzFV_m}{RT}\right) \quad (2.14)$$

where S is the main substrate (glucose), A is the accessory substrate (Na^+), the subscripts i and o denote intra- and extracellular concentrations, respectively, n is the transport stoichiometry (number of A molecules/number of S molecules), z is the valence of the translocated species per cycle ($z = z_A + z_S$), V_m is the membrane voltage, and R , T , and F have their usual meanings. Changing to decimal power notation and inserting appropriate values for the constants, the exponent becomes $\sim nzV_m/60$. Hence, in the case of glucose transport via SGLT1 ($n = 2$), for $V_m = -60$ mV and Na^+ concentration ratio is 10, the maximum glucose concentration ratio (cell/lumen) is 10^4 .

A similar equation describes the minimum concentration ratio of main substrate that can be achieved by an antiport:

$$\frac{S_i}{S_o} = \left[\frac{A_o}{A_i} \right]^n \exp\left(\frac{-nzFV_m}{RT}\right) \quad (2.15)$$

where the symbols are the same as for Eq. (2.14). The difference is that the concentration ratios for A are inverted in these equations, denoting that in one case S and A are transported in the same direction, and in the other case they are transported in opposite directions. For the example of $\text{Na}^+\text{-Ca}^{2+}$ exchange with $V_m = -60$ mV and Na^+ concentration ratio is 10, the minimum Ca^{2+} concentration ratio (cell/extracellular) is 10^{-6} for $n = 4$, the most likely stoichiometry.

ION TRANSPORT PROTEINS

Ion transport proteins are best classified in four groups: pores; channels; carriers (also called *transporters*); and pumps. Ion pores and channels are integral membrane proteins that when “open” communicate the aqueous solutions adjacent to the membrane, and

permit ion flux in a direction determined by the electrochemical gradient. The permeant ion interacts little with the pore or channel, and thus the number of ions translocated per unit time (turnover number) is very high, typically $10^6\text{--}10^8\text{ s}^{-1}$. Whereas pores are always open (ion conductive), ion channels undergo “gating,” transitions between open (conductive) and closed (nonconductive) states. The part of the protein thought to move or change conformation during the gating is called the *gate*. Gating can be elicited by physical factors (changes in membrane voltage or mechanical stretch) or chemical factors (such as neurotransmitters or second messengers).

Carriers are also integral membrane proteins. In contrast with channels, the function of carrier proteins involves a chemical interaction with the transported ion, namely ion binding, which elicits conformational changes in the carrier, eventually resulting in the translocation of the ion across the membrane. Because of these interactions between the carrier and the transported ion, the transport rate is much slower than that of channels, typically $10^2\text{--}10^4\text{ s}^{-1}$. The net ion flux through carriers is also determined by the electrochemical gradient, as in channels, but in a more complex fashion, because certain carriers can transport several ions in the same cycle.

Pumps are similar to carriers in that there are ion binding and conformational changes that cause ion translocation, but differ in that their function is coupled to a metabolic energy source, such as ATP hydrolysis. Pumps have low turnover numbers, similar to those of carriers.

Many ion transport proteins associate with so-called adapter proteins that appear to have two roles: to determine the subcellular location of the transport protein; and to facilitate its interaction with signal transduction components, including receptors, second messenger producing enzymes, and protein kinases. These adapter proteins often contain a specific protein–protein interaction domain called the *PDZ domain*.⁸² Adapter proteins therefore contribute to the formation of macromolecular complexes of which ion transport proteins are important components.

During the last decade, atomic-resolution structures have been obtained by X-ray crystallography for a number of prototypical transport proteins, including bacterial pores,^{21,89} prokaryotic ion channels,^{26,28} the lactopermease of *Escherichia coli* carrier,^{1,2} the mammalian sarcoplasmic-reticulum Ca^{2+} pump,^{107,108} and several ATP-binding cassette (ABC) proteins.^{4,19,53,113} These studies have provided detailed insight into the mechanism of the function of these specific transport proteins, as well as a framework in which to analyze other proteins. An example is the modeling of the cystic fibrosis transmembrane conductance regulator (CFTR) channel, based on the structure of other ABC proteins.⁷⁸

As summarized in an excellent recent review,⁷⁴ the first atomic-resolution structure of an integral membrane protein, the reaction center from photosynthetic bacteria, was reported in 1985.²⁰ At that time there were 268 entries in the Protein Data Bank (PDB). In 2010, the PDB contained almost 60,000 entries, with about 700 of these being membrane proteins, and 80% of these belonging to the all-alpha type (i.e., the transmembrane regions are α helices, instead of the β sheets found in prokaryotic membrane proteins). Only *ca.* 250 of these structures are considered unique.¹¹⁴

An essential property of membrane proteins involved in ion transport is their selectivity, i.e., their capacity to “distinguish” between similar ions. This requires the ion pathway to have specific binding sites. In ion selective channels, the ion is at least partially dehydrated, with the binding sites providing favorable interactions, i.e., “replacing” the water molecules surrounding the ion in free solution. Selectivity results from a more favorable interaction of the site with one type of ion than another.⁴² Ion-binding sites in transport proteins are formed by amino acid residues that provide charges of the opposite sign, with a size that specifically accommodates the ion. These sites have been identified in several crystal structures of transport proteins.⁴² Small molecules selective for monovalent cations have been synthesized by changing the size of the cavity.^{23,42}

Pores

Pores are wide conduits across biological membranes that are permanently open; they do not gate (Figure 2.7a). The best studied examples are those formed by bacterial porins, but they are also present in mitochondria (porins) and lymphocytes (perforin, a secretory product). It is also possible that most aquaporins are pores (see Chapters 4 and 41).

Bacterial pores formed by the transmembrane proteins called *porins* are radically different from animal membrane proteins, in that the transmembrane domains, instead of being α helices, are β sheets. For discussions of porin structures, see Delcour²¹ and Schulz.⁸⁹

Channels

Like pores, channels have the property of being accessible to both sides of the membrane at the same time, but this occurs only part of the time. Channels open and close stochastically. Gating may be determined by physical or chemical processes (see below), both requiring a sensing mechanism. In the open channel there is ion permeation with a characteristic selectivity for one or more ion species. Channels also have typical conductance (related to ion permeability),

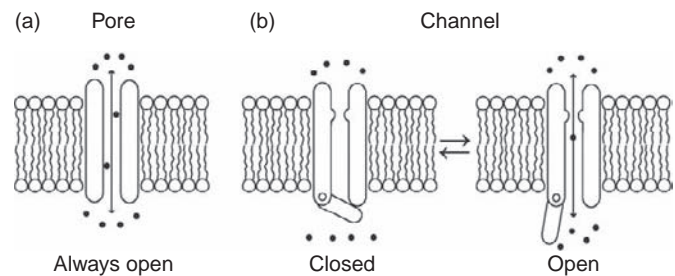


FIGURE 2.7 Pores and channels. (a) A pore is a transmembrane protein that forms an aqueous conduit across the membrane that is always accessible from both sides and never closed. Pores are generally of large diameter, and thus permit passive transport of small ions as well as larger hydrophilic solutes, driven by the electrochemical gradient across the membrane. (b) A channel is also a transmembrane protein that forms an aqueous conduit across the membrane. However, in contrast with a pore, it can have at least two conformations, closed and open. The change in conformation is depicted in the figure by a swiveling portion of the molecule, the gate. Gating is the process by which the channels open and close. When the channel is open, it is permeable (conductive), and its interior is accessible to both sides. When the channel is closed, it is impermeable. Channels are generally of smaller radius than pores, and exhibit varying degrees of ion selectivity. As in the case of pores, ion fluxes through channels are driven by the electrochemical gradient across the membrane.

physiological regulation, and inhibitor pattern. Hence, the functional “fingerprint” of a channel includes gating, sensing mechanism, conductance, selectivity, regulation, and pharmacological inhibition.

In channels, the main transport-related conformational change is the gating between open and closed states (Figure 2.7b). The gate is the portion of the channel protein that “moves” to cause channel opening and closure. When the channel is closed, it is impermeable, that is, nonconductive. When it is open, it is permeable or conductive, and allows ion fluxes, with a net flux that can also be expressed as the current carried by the ions. The flux, and hence the current, are determined by the permeability of the channel and the driving force, that is, the electrochemical gradient for the permeant ion. The channel persists in the open state for a given time and allows ion permeation without additional conformational changes during the opening. Hence, one conformational change (gating) allows for transport of a large number of ions, with no additional chemical modification of the protein. The open channel constitutes a water-filled conduit that spans the lipid bilayer communicating the two solutions separated by the membrane. The interior of the open channel is accessible from both solutions at the same time. The large number of ions that cross a channel per unit of time causes a measurable electrical current, allowing investigators to measure single channel events, net ion movements across individual molecules, either *in situ*, using the patch-clamp technique⁸⁸ or reconstituting purified channels and incorporating them

in artificial planar bilayers.⁷⁵ The two channel conformations, open and closed, underlie the discrete levels observed in current records.

The total current (which denotes ion flux) via a population of channels of one kind in a membrane is given by:

$$I = N \cdot P_o \cdot g \cdot (V_m - E_i) \quad (2.16)$$

where I is the current, N is the number of functional channels in the membrane, P_o is the channel open probability (time open/total time), g is the single channel conductance (the reciprocal of resistance), V_m is the membrane voltage, and E_i is the permeant ion's equilibrium potential. Note that the term $g(V_m - E_i)$ denotes i , the single channel current. Equation (2.16) encompasses all mechanisms of channel function regulation: number of copies in the membrane; open probability (gating); conductance; and electrochemical driving force. The ion flux and the ion current through are related by the Faraday constant and the ion valence.

Whereas carriers can be uniporters, symporters or antiporters, channels can only be uniporters. There can be ion-ion interactions in channels, such as single file diffusion,^{36,50} but molecular flux coupling, such as observed in carriers, does not occur. As is the case of carriers, channels exhibit substrate selectivity, typical pharmacological inhibition, and transport saturation, although the latter is more evident in carriers.

Plasma membrane ion channels are classified based on their selectivity. The most studied can be selective for K^+ , Na^+ , Ca^{2+} , H^+ , Cl^- , cation or anions, or may be nonselective. Certain channels are highly selective for specific ions, whereas others discriminate less among different ions. The bases of selectivity are ion size and charge. It has been well-established that the Na^+ , K^+ , and Ca^{2+} channels of excitable membranes, as well as the epithelial Na^+ channel, K^+ channels, and Cl^- channels, are highly selective, where permeability ratios between two ions of the same charge and similar size can be 100 or more. As explained in more detail below, the structural basis of high selectivity channels is a very narrow region in the pore, called the *selectivity filter*, in which the dehydrated permeant ion is coordinated by dipoles in the protein.⁶⁹ Other ion channels are less selective. For example, gap junction channels, which communicate between adjacent cells, have cation-anion permeability ratios ranging from about 1 to 10, values similar to those of tight junctions of leaky (high permeability) epithelia. These channels are wider, the ions permeate in the hydrated state, and the cation-anion selectivity is probably governed by fixed charges facing the pore.

K^+ -Selective Channels

All known K^+ channels belong to a single protein family, characterized by the highly conserved K^+

channel signature sequence,⁴⁸ which forms the selectivity filter. K^+ channels display high selectivity and high conduction rates. X-ray crystallographic studies performed in recent years have revealed the atomic structures of several K^+ channels. Roderick MacKinnon was awarded the 2003 Nobel Prize for Chemistry for this work. In this section, we summarize the current understanding of K^+ channel selectivity and conduction derived from structural studies. For a discussion of the gating process, see MacKinnon.⁶⁹

The K^+ channel is formed by four subunits arranged around a central pore.^{24,120} Each subunit consists of two transmembrane α helices (inner and outer, relative to the pore), and the pore helix, which is tilted and penetrates only half of the membrane thickness. Near the center of the membrane the pore forms a water-filled cavity that contains a hydrated K^+ .¹²⁰ As shown in Figure 2.8, the selectivity filter, formed by the signature-sequence amino acids, is located between the central cavity and the extracellular solution. The filter consists of four layers of carbonyl oxygen atoms and a layer of threonine hydroxyl oxygen atoms, creating four K^+ -binding sites (numbered one to four starting from the extracellular side). Thus, each dehydrated K^+ is surrounded by eight oxygen atoms, four "above" and four "below." The selectivity filter thus mimics the arrangement of the K^+ hydration shell, in which a single K^+ is surrounded on average by eight water molecules. The K^+ ions are "transferred" by diffusion from water to the selectivity filter, the hydration energy being compensated for by the binding energy in the filter. Sodium ions do not enter the selectivity filter,^{119,120} because the selectivity filter binding energy cannot compensate for the Na^+ higher hydration energy. The small distances between the four K^+ -binding sites cause electrostatic repulsion, so only two sites (one and three or two and four) are thought to be occupied at a time.⁷⁷ The electrostatic repulsion tends to balance the binding forces, thus ensuring a high turnover number.⁶⁹

K^+ channels are present in the plasma membranes of virtually all cells. Their principal functions are generation of the resting membrane potential of the cell (inside negative), and performance of transepithelial K^+ transport, principally in renal and intestine epithelia. In addition, K^+ channels are involved in cell volume regulation, in the regulation of insulin secretion by pancreatic β -cells, and probably in cell growth and differentiation, although the latter functions remain controversial.

Na^+ -Selective Channels

There are two broad classes of Na^+ channels: depolarization-activated Na^+ channels expressed in neurons and other excitable cells and the ENaC/degenerin ion family, which includes the epithelial Na^+ channel

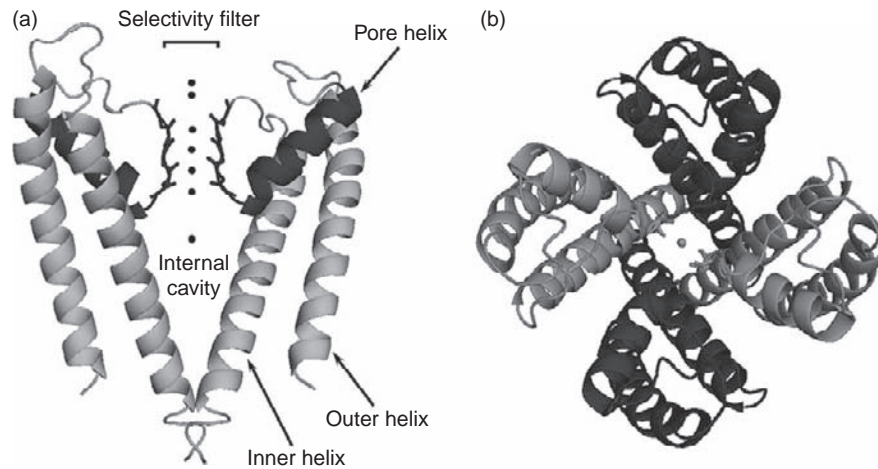


FIGURE 2.8 Structure of a potassium channel. (a) Side view of the KcsA channel showing only two subunits for simplicity. Two TM2 helices (pore helices) are shown in darker gray. The oxygens from backbone carbonyl groups at the selectivity filter coordinate K^+ (black circles) at four sites. There are two additional binding sites on the extracellular side (ions in transition), and one ion trapped in the internal cavity, presumably stabilized by the electrical dipole of the pore helices. (b) Tetrameric structure of the channel viewed from the extracellular side. The inner helices form the pore, with the narrowest part corresponding to the activation gate. Each subunit is shown in a tone different from that of the neighboring subunits (built with PyMol).

(ENaC). Other family members are proteins involved in mechanoreception and neuronal degeneration. ENaC is expressed in the apical (luminal) membrane of principal cells of the collecting duct, and in epithelial cells of colon and airway epithelium. ENaC has slow kinetics, low conductance, and a high open probability. Its function is to absorb Na^+ across the apical membrane of the epithelial cells; the Na^+ is then pumped out of the cell by the Na^+, K^+ -ATPase expressed in the basolateral membrane. Mammalian ENaC is a heterotrimer (α -, β -, and γ -subunits with high structural homology¹²). All three subunits are thought to contribute to the formation of the pore, but no crystal structure is available.¹⁰⁰

Cl⁻ Selective Channels

The largest family of Cl^- channels is the CIC family, with nine members in mammals. CIC channels participate in cell excitability, maintenance of the resting potential, Cl^- transport in certain epithelial cells, Cl^- and H^+ transport in intracellular vesicles, and cell volume regulation. CIC genes, expressed in both prokaryotes and eukaryotes, encode both Cl^- channels and Cl^-/H^+ antiporters.^{27,60} In mammals, the channels (CIC-1, CIC-2, CIC-Ka, and CIC-Kb) are expressed in the plasma membrane, whereas the antiporters (CIC-3, 4, -5, -6, and -7) are expressed in endosomal/lysosomal membranes. This is an interesting case in which members of a family of ion transport proteins include channels and carriers.^{60,76}

The structure of a bacterial CIC protein^{28,29} shows a double-barrel channel: homodimer with each monomer containing a pore. Each subunit has 17 transmembrane helices and Cl^- in the channel is coordinated by

residues from several helices, including a highly-conserved Lys. In the membrane, CIC proteins form two hourglass-like funnels that meet in a narrow constriction near the middle of the bilayer, the anion selectivity filter.²⁹ Some mammalian isoforms of CIC proteins require α - and β -subunits for function.⁶⁰ The cystic fibrosis transmembrane conductance regulator (CFTR) is a Cl^- channel expressed in Cl^- -secreting epithelial cells; it does not belong to the CIC family, but is a member of the ABC superfamily. ABC proteins can be either channels or pumps. CFTR is expressed in the apical membranes of airway, small intestine, pancreatic duct, biliary tree, and vas deferens epithelia. It consists of two homologous halves, each formed by six transmembrane helices followed by a nucleotide-binding domain (NBD). The two halves are joined by the regulatory or R domain, a large hydrophilic sequence located in the cytoplasm. The function of CFTR is Cl^- secretion across the apical membrane, which is the primary event for salt and water secretion by the epithelia listed above. CFTR gating is a complex process involving phosphorylation of the R domain by protein kinase A, ATP binding to the NBDs, their dimerization, and ATP hydrolysis.¹⁵ CFTR also appears to regulate other Cl^- channels, as well as Na^+ and K^+ channels, by unclear mechanisms. CFTR is expressed in all segments of the renal tubule, but its functional role in the normal kidney is not clear; also, cystic fibrosis patients have no discernible renal phenotype.²² In polycystic kidney disease, CFTR is abundantly expressed in the apical membranes of the cysts cells, and plays an essential role in Cl^- secretion, which drives fluid secretion and cyst growth¹¹ (Chapter 81).

A third group of Cl^- channels are Ca^{2+} -activated (Ca^{2+} -activated Cl^- channels or CaCCs). They are involved in epithelial absorption and secretion, muscle contraction, neuronal excitability, sensory transduction, cell volume regulation, and other cell functions. Several protein types have been proposed to account for CaCC currents, but very recent studies by three groups have provided solid evidence that TMEM16A (also named anoctamin-1 or ANO1) has functional characteristics consistent with CaCCs. Site-specific mutations alter channel properties, suggesting that TMEM16A is at least part of the channel. Expression of TMEM16B also results in CaCC functions, but with different biophysical properties than those associated with TMEM16A. The function(s) of other TMEM16 proteins remain unknown. TMEM16A and the nine other members of the family have a similar topology and secondary structure, with eight transmembrane helices and intracellular N- and C-termini. This protein family has been long-studied by developmental and cancer biologists. Some family members are upregulated in tumors and loss-of-function of others is conducive to defects in development (see ³⁹ and ⁴⁵ for reviews).

For a detailed discussion of ion channels, see Chapter 8. In addition, excellent treatments of ion channels in general can be found in the book by Hille,⁵⁰ and the review articles by Catterall¹³ and Dawson.¹⁸ There are also several excellent recent reviews on ion channel structure–function relationships,^{24,25,42,68,69} and on ion channels in renal epithelial cells.^{14,46,52,56,60} Chapters 8, 30, 31, 47, and 63 cover renal ion channels.

Carriers

Carriers are transporters that perform transmembrane translocation of solute (and perhaps water; see Chapter 4) by a sequential process thought to involve three basic steps. First, binding of the transported substrate to the carrier facing one side of the membrane; second, change in conformation of the carrier, with translocation of the substrate (and the binding site) to the opposite side of the membrane; and third, release of the substrate. It is thought that access to the binding site from either bathing solution is by diffusion (or electrodiffusion) in pore-like regions of the carrier molecule.⁶¹ Hence, two such steps could be added to the simplified scheme above.

In carriers, there is a state in which the binding site and the substrate are inaccessible from either side of the membrane.⁶² The existence of this state, called *occlusion*, is one of many arguments supporting the idea of conformational change in carrier function. Carriers behave like enzymes, in that the substrate

binds to the protein; however, instead of chemical transformation of the substrate, the carrier performs its translocation. Carriers contain substrate-binding domains accessible from one side of the membrane at a time. In contrast with channels, they never form a conduit that communicates the two bathing solutions, i.e., the binding site is never accessible from both sides of the membrane. Instead, carriers undergo conformational changes that alter the “sidedness” of the substrate-binding site; the substrate binds on one side, the conformation of the carrier protein changes, the substrate is occluded, the binding site is translocated (with substrate) to the other side of the membrane, and the substrate is then released. In comparison with a channel, which has one gate, a carrier may be considered to have two gates, as illustrated in [Figure 2.9](#).

The notion of a carrier protein as a “ferryboat” binding the substrate at a membrane–solution interface and carrying it to the other side, where the solute is released to the other solution, is inconsistent with current knowledge of the biochemistry and molecular biology of carriers. Nevertheless, kinetic schemes based on the ferryboat model remain very useful to explain carrier function at a phenomenological level.

Substrate transport by carriers is inherently slow, because each substrate molecule (or group of molecules in cases of coupled transport; see below) must undergo an independent binding reaction, followed by the conformational change of the carrier molecule. This explains the low turnover number of carriers, similar to typical rates of enzyme catalysis of 10^2 – 10^3 per second.⁹⁹

Most carriers have exquisite substrate selectivity (e.g., the glucose carrier GLUT1 transports D-glucose, but not L-glucose) and can also exhibit quite specific pharmacological inhibition. At low substrate concentration, the substrate flux increases linearly with the concentration, and can be confused with simple diffusion, but at high substrate concentration it saturates, as expected from occupancy of a limited number of slowly turning binding sites. The low turnover number, high substrate selectivity and saturation of carriers, and to some extent the mechanisms of pharmacological inhibition, also support the notions of substrate binding and conformational change during the transport cycle.

Carrier-mediated transport can be classified in three types depending on the number of substrates and the transport directions ([Figure 2.10](#)). When the carrier transports only one substrate, the process is called *facilitated diffusion* or *uniport*; the carrier is a uniporter. Other carriers transport two or more substrates. When all substrates are transported in the same direction, the process is called *co-transport* or *symport*; the carrier is a *co-transporter* or *symporter*. When there is substrate transport in opposite directions, the process is called

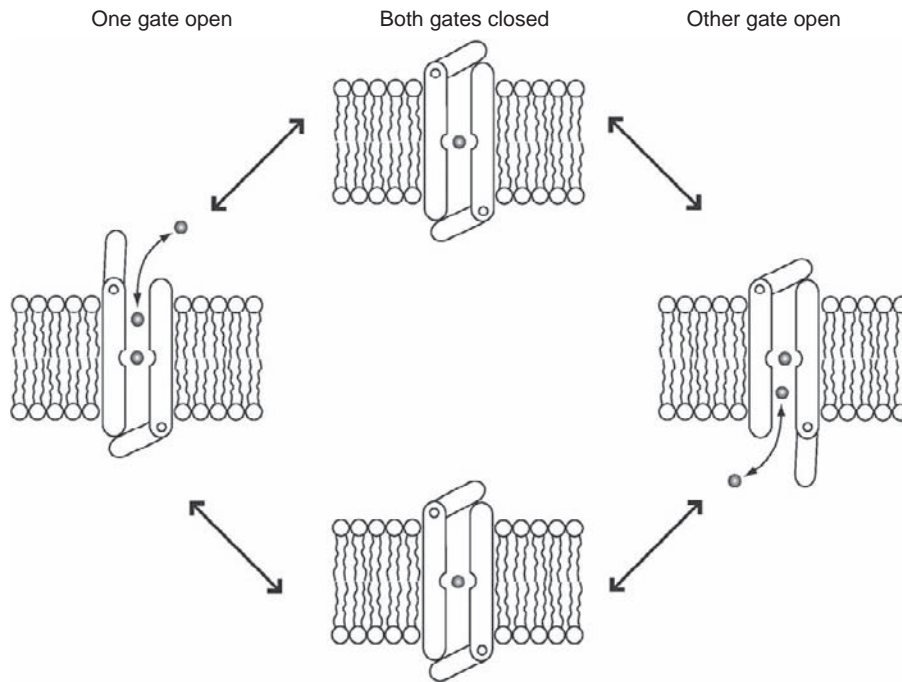


FIGURE 2.9 Carriers. A carrier can be understood as a membrane transport protein with two gates and one or more binding sites for the substrate. The figure depicts the transport stages for a uniporter, the simplest kind of carrier molecule. From left to right: the substrate binds to the carrier at a site available to only one side of the membrane (first gate open, second gate closed); this closes the second gate and the substrate is occluded (both gates closed); the second gate opens and the binding site and the substrate become accessible to the other side of the membrane, and the substrate is then released. The transport process is passive. The unidirectional and net fluxes are determined by the chemical or electrochemical potential difference, for uncharged and charged substrates, respectively (modified with permission from ref. [37]).

exchange or antiport; the carrier is an *exchanger* or *antiporter*. Uniporters, like channels, can only perform passive transport. The overall transport via a symporter or an antiporter is downhill. There is always passive translocation of at least one substrate, and there can be secondary active translocation of one or more additional substrates, using the energy stored in another substrate's chemical or electrochemical gradient. For example, in the case of two substrates, all the energy employed in uphill translocation of one species derives from the passive transport of the other one, so that no metabolic energy is directly used.

The largest family of secondary active transporters is the major facilitator superfamily (MFS).⁸⁷ MFS proteins are expressed from bacteria to vertebrates. They range from 400 to 600 amino acids in size, have 12 transmembrane helices, and N- and C-termini are located on the cytoplasmic side. These proteins transport numerous substrates, and may be uniporters, symporters or antiporters. The atomic structures of four bacterial members of the MFS have been solved: the H⁺-lactose co-transporter (LacY) or lac-permease,² the P_i/glycerol-3-phosphate antiporter (GlpT),⁵⁸ the multidrug-resistance antiporter EmrD,¹¹⁷ and the fucose permease FucP.¹⁷ In all structures the transmembrane helices

form two domains, N- and C-termini (each consisting of a six-helix bundle) with a pseudo two-fold symmetry. A large cavity open to the cytoplasm and closed to the periplasm is present in the LacY and GlpT structures, suggesting that the crystals correspond to the inward facing conformation.^{2,58} The structure of the FucP shows an outward open amphipathic cavity.¹⁷

Of great importance for mammalian physiology in general and renal physiology in particular are the solute sodium symporters (SSS), a subset of the MFS. These constitute a large family of proteins that co-transport Na⁺ with a variety of solutes, including sugars, amino acids, inorganic acids, and vitamins.¹¹⁵ They are expressed in the kidney and other transport organs. The crystal structure of a bacterial Na⁺-galactose symporter was solved in 2008.³² As predicted from earlier studies, it has 14 transmembrane helices, extracellular N- and C-termini, and a structural core formed by two clusters of five helices each, with opposite orientations. This structure is similar to that of lac-permease,² suggesting a common structure for sugar co-transporters. The galactose-binding site is central, and is separated from the adjacent solutions by hydrophobic amino acid residues; the Na⁺-binding site could not be identified in the crystal structure.³² Another

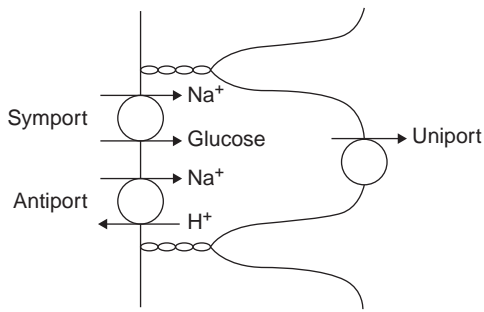


FIGURE 2.10 Types of carrier-mediated transport. The figure depicts an epithelial cell (e.g., renal proximal tubule) expressing different kinds of carriers, classified according to the number of substrates and the directions of the net fluxes. *Uniporter* is a carrier that transports only one substrate in a complete cycle; the process is known as facilitated diffusion or uniport, and is always passive. Shown in the figure is a glucose uniporter at the basolateral membrane. *Symporter* is a carrier that transports at least two substrates in the same direction in each cycle. The process is known as co-transport or symport; the overall transport process is downhill, but the electrochemical gradient of one substrate can be used to transport the other one actively (a form of secondary active transport). Shown in the figure is a Na^+ -glucose symporter at the apical membrane. *Antiporter* is a carrier that transports at least two substrates in opposite directions in each cycle. The process is known as countertransport, exchange or antiport; the overall transport process is downhill, but again the electrochemical gradient of one substrate can be used to translocate the other one actively (secondary active transport). Shown in the figure is a Na^+/H^+ antiporter at the apical membrane. See also [Figure 2.6](#).

symporter, LeuT (leucine and Na^+)¹¹⁶ clearly shows leucine and Na^+ bound to a deep region of the protein ([Figure 2.11](#)). The Na^+ ions are fully dehydrated and surrounded by six oxygen atoms in one site and by five in the other. These studies represent impressive progress in a few years, but considerably more work will be needed to fully understand the function of these proteins at the atomic level.

Specific aspects of carrier-mediated transport are covered in Chapters 32, 53, 54, 55, and 73. The reader is also referred to LeFevre,⁶⁶ Schultz,⁹⁰ and Stein⁹⁹ for quantitative treatments of carrier-mediated transport. Some specific carriers are well covered in recent reviews by Abramson et al.,¹ Hediger et al.,⁴⁷ Tanner,¹⁰⁴ and Zachos et al.¹¹⁸

Pumps

Ion pumps are discussed in Chapter 3. Other reviews of ion pumps are Apell,⁵ Brini and Carafoli,¹⁰ Facciotti et al.,³¹ Fambrough and Inesi,³³ Finbow and Harrison,³⁵ Horisberger,^{54,55} Läuger,⁶⁵ Pedersen,⁸³ Sachs and Munson⁸⁵ and Toyoshima.¹⁰⁶

Ion pumps can be classified according to the source of metabolic energy. Pumps in general can be driven by light, redox potential or ATP hydrolysis. Animal cell

plasma membrane ATPases belong to the P type, which is characterized by the formation of a phosphorylated intermediary (Na^+,K^+ -, H^+,K^+ -, and Ca^{2+} -ATPase) ([Figure 2.12](#)) or to the V type (vacuolar H^+ -ATPase). In intracellular membranes, there is expression of the vacuolar-type H^+ pump, as well as F-type (or F_1 - or F_0 - type) ATPases, the ATP synthase expressed in the inner mitochondrial membrane. ATP synthases are also expressed in purple bacteria and in green plants. Their function can be outlined as follows. Multimeric protein complexes (respiratory chain complex in mitochondria, bacteriorhodopsin in purple bacteria, photosynthetic reaction center in chloroplasts) generate an H^+ electrochemical gradient from the redox potential of NADPH (mitochondria) or light energy (others). The transmembrane H^+ electrochemical gradient is then used by ATP synthases to synthesize ATP from ADP and P_i . Hence, the function of these proteins is to synthesize ATP, dissipating the ion gradient in the process. However, they are reversible, and under appropriate conditions they will hydrolyze ATP and generate an electrochemical ion gradient. Similarly, the Na^+,K^+ -ATPase normally hydrolyzes ATP to transport actively Na^+ out of the cell and K^+ into the cell, but under certain experimental conditions it can operate in a reverse mode, that is, downhill ion fluxes (Na^+ into the cell and K^+ out of the cell) coupled to the synthesis of ATP.

The ion pumps present in plasma membranes of epithelial cells are the Na^+,K^+ -ATPase, Ca^{2+} -ATPase, H^+ -ATPase, and H^+,K^+ -ATPase. Other pumps have been suggested to exist in these tissues, but they are either unique to certain epithelia or controversial. The molecular structures of these pumps have been identified, and significant progress has been made in understanding their function, but much work remains to be done in this area. Ion occlusion is a well-known stage during the pump cycle.⁴⁰ As is the case with carrier function, occlusion denotes that the conformational change necessary for transport does change the accessibility of the substrate-binding sites to the solutions bathing the membrane.

The Na^+,K^+ -, H^+,K^+ -, and Ca^{2+} -ATPase are all of the P type, which is characterized by the phosphorylation of an aspartic acid residue (in the sequence DKTG) during the pump catalytic cycle. The Na^+,K^+ -ATPase is a ubiquitous pump in epithelial cells. In each cycle, one ATP molecule is hydrolyzed, three Na^+ are transported from the cytoplasm to the interstitial fluid, and two K^+ are transported in the opposite direction. In each cycle there is thus a net transfer of charge across the membrane (one net positive charge is extruded), and hence the pump is electrogenic, tending to hyperpolarize the cell. Its turnover number is in the range of values for carriers less than 10^2 s^{-1} . The catalytic cycle of P-type ATPases is shown in [Figure 2.12](#).

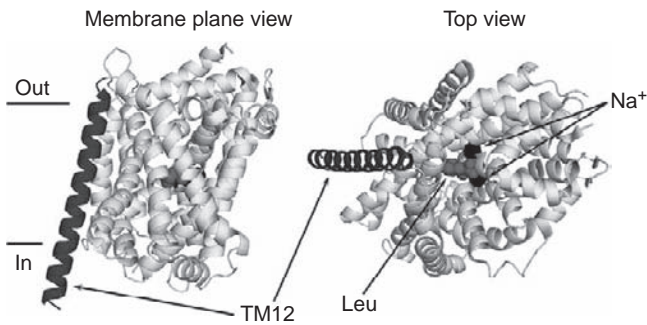


FIGURE 2.11 **Structure of a symporter.** Side (left) and extracellular (right) views of the LeuT, a prokaryotic Leu- Na^+ symporter that belongs to the neurotransmitter sodium symporter family. One protomer of the dimer in the crystal structure is shown. Transmembrane helix 12 is shown in darker gray. Leu and Na^+ bound deep into the structure core are shown in darker gray and black, respectively (built with PyMol from PDB 2A65).

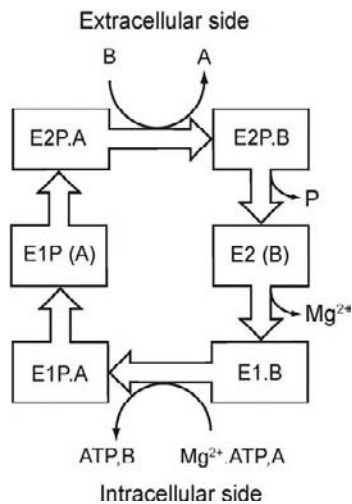


FIGURE 2.12 **Catalytic cycle for P-type ATPases modeled as countertransport pumps exchanging Na^+ (A) for K^+ (B), Ca^{2+} (A) for H^+ (B) or H^+ (A) for K^+ (B) (Na^+ , K^+ , Ca^{2+} , and H^+ , K^+ -ATPase, respectively) (E1: conformation with ion-binding sites accessible from cytoplasm; E2: conformation with ion-binding sites accessible from the extracellular face; E(A) or E(B): ion “occluded” in the protomer) (modified with permission from ref. [85]).**

The Na^+ , K^+ -ATPase is expressed in virtually all vertebrate epithelial cells, where it is usually targeted to the basolateral membrane. In two cases, the choroid plexus and the retinal pigment epithelium, the pump is targeted to the apical membrane and epithelial cell polarity is inverted *vis-à-vis* other tissues. The pump consists of α - and β -subunits in a 1:1 stoichiometry (likely $\alpha 2:\beta 2$). The α -subunit is responsible for both ion transport and ATPase activity, and contains the binding sites for Na^+ , K^+ , and ouabain, a specific inhibitor, as well as the phosphorylation site. The β -subunit,

previously thought to be just involved in assembly and delivery of the pump, has in addition an important role in K^+ binding.⁹³ The α -subunit has three isoforms (apparent molecular mass 120 kDa) and the β -subunit has two isoforms, with apparent molecular mass of 50 kDa. Pump isoforms are tissue-specific, change during organ development, and exhibit different pharmacological properties. The Na^+ , K^+ pump was first crystallized in 2007,⁷⁹ and a higher resolution structure was obtained in 2009.⁹³ At this time, our understanding of the structure–function relationships is less than that for the sarcoplasmic reticulum Ca^{2+} pump (see below). The regulation of the activity of the Na^+ , K^+ pump is complex, and an important regulatory mechanism in the kidney is the increase in Na^+ pump expression in principal cells of the collecting duct under the action of mineralocorticoids. These hormones stimulate of Na^+ entry via ENaC, which results in an increase in intracellular Na^+ concentration that appears to mediate the stimulation of pump expression.

The plasma membrane Ca^{2+} pump (PMCA pump) actively exports Ca^{2+} from the cell, exchanging it for H^+ (the stoichiometry appears to be 1 Ca^{2+} out:2 H^+ in:1 ATP molecule hydrolyzed). The pump is 120–140 kDa, with ten transmembrane helices and three substantial intracellular domains. The crystal structure of the Ca^{2+} pump from sarcoplasmic/endoplasmic reticulum (SERCA pump) was solved a decade ago.¹⁰⁷ It has two Ca^{2+} -binding sites from which the ions are extruded, with a stoichiometry of 2 Ca^{2+} per ATP hydrolyzed, different from that of the PMCA pump. The PMCA pump has high affinity for intracellular Ca^{2+} , in the submicromolar range. The conformational change elicited by ATP hydrolysis is thought to make the Ca^{2+} sites face the extracellular space and the affinity decrease, causing Ca^{2+} release. The function of the PMCA pump is to help maintain a low intracellular Ca^{2+} concentration. It is a high affinity, low capacity system. The PMCA pump is stimulated by calmodulin and 1,25-dihydroxyvitamin D (for a review, see ¹⁰).

The H^+ / K^+ -ATPase is expressed in gastric epithelial cells (gastric isoform), colonocytes (colonic isoform), and renal collecting ducts (both isoforms). As with the Na^+ , K^+ -ATPase and the Ca^{2+} -ATPases, the H^+ / K^+ -ATPase consists of α - and β -subunits. The α -subunits of the two isoforms, are very similar in amino acid sequence to the α -subunit of the Na^+ , K^+ -ATPase. The function of the renal H^+ / K^+ -ATPase is acid secretion and K^+ reabsorption

In the last decade, crystal structures have been obtained for the Ca^{2+} pump from sarcoplasmic reticulum,^{107,109,110} the plasma membrane Na^+ , K^+ -ATPase^{79,80,93} and the plant plasma membrane H^+ -ATPase.⁸³ Although the Ca^{2+} -ATPase from rabbit

skeletal muscle sarcoplasmic reticulum (SERCA1a) is not a plasma membrane protein, it is currently the better known P-type ion transporting ATPase. The mass of SERCA1a is 110 kDa, it has 10 transmembrane helices (M1–M10), three cytoplasmic domains (A [actuator or anchor]; N [nucleotide-binding]; and P [phosphorylation]), and small SR-lumen loops. SERCA1a transports, against the electrochemical gradient across the SR membrane, two Ca^{2+} per ATP hydrolyzed, reducing $[\text{Ca}^{2+}]$ in the cytosol, and accumulating it in the SR lumen. Two or three H^+ are exchanged for the Ca^{2+} in each cycle. As is the case with other P-ATPases, primary active ion transport results from a conformational change of the pump (from E1 to E2). In E1, the Ca^{2+} ions bind with high affinity and face the cytoplasm; in E2, the affinity is low and Ca^{2+} ions face the SR lumen. The Ca^{2+} translocation would take place between E1P and E2P, two states of the phosphorylated pump. Similar states exist in the operation of the Na^+, K^+ -ATPase (see Chapter 3).

The first determination of the structure of SERCA1 by X-ray crystallography in 2000¹⁰⁷ was followed by over 20 structures in different states that essentially cover the reaction cycle, making it the best characterized P-type ion-translocating ATPase.¹⁰⁶ The atomic structure, represented in Figure 2.13,^{107,108} revealed that transmembrane helices 4, 5, and 6 contain the amino acid residues that bind the two Ca^{2+} ions transported per cycle. These results, combined with molecular dynamics simulations¹⁰¹ have provided detailed

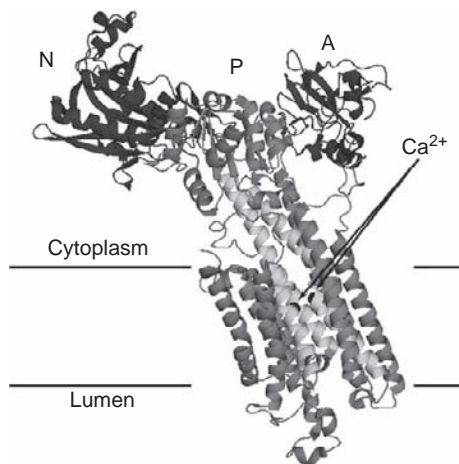


FIGURE 2.13 Structure of a pump. Side view of the Ca^{2+} -ATPase in the $\text{E1}\cdot 2\text{Ca}^{2+}$ state. The cytoplasmic nucleotide binding (N) and actuator (A) domains are shown in darker gray. The A domain is part of the mechanism that controls Ca^{2+} binding and release. The cytoplasmic P domain is also labeled. This domain contains the phosphorylation residue Asn^{351} and several P-type ATPase critical residues, including the Mg^{2+} coordination residue Asp^{703} . Transmembrane helices 4–6, which contribute residues to the binding of Ca^{2+} , are shown in lighter gray. The two Ca^{2+} are shown as black balls (built with PyMol from PDB 1SU4).

information about the binding sites and the conformational changes underlying ion pumping.^{105,106} Differences between several structures revealed that SERCA1 Ca^{2+} binding and dissociation elicit large conformational changes in the transmembrane domains, mechanically linked to similar changes in the cytoplasmic domains. Homology modeling suggests that the cation-binding sites of the Ca^{2+} - and Na^+, K^+ -ATPases are virtually the same.⁸⁴ A critical movement of transmembrane helix 4 causes the release of a cation (Ca^{2+} or Na^+) and the binding of the other cation (H^+ or K^+) at a displaced position with respect to the membrane, thus preventing competition between the cations.

Similarities and Differences between Ion Transport Proteins

The recent progress in genomics and structural biology of membrane proteins (*ca.* 700 crystal structures, of which 250 are unique¹¹⁴), combined with increasing sophistication of biochemical and biophysical studies has begun to clarify the essential similarities and differences between these proteins. We wish to make several important points in this closing section. First, there are big differences between ion channels, on the one hand, and carriers and pumps, on the other, and the differences in function are explained by the differences in structure. Second, there are families in which individuals can be either channels or carriers, or either channels or pumps, suggesting something akin to a “common ancestor.” Third, there is at least one instance in which pharmacological intervention can transform a pump into a channel. We discuss briefly these three points.

1. *Channels versus carriers and pumps.* The crucial functional difference between channels, on the one hand, and carriers or pumps, on the other, is in the turnover numbers: channels conduct ions rapidly (10^6 – 10^8 s^{-1}), whereas carriers and pumps are much slower (10^2 – 10^4 s^{-1}). This difference is related to the relatively slow conformational changes that accompany solute flux in carriers and pumps, while in open channels no conformational changes occur during transport. In addition, there is a difference in access of the transported ion(s) to the critical site. As we saw in the structures of K^+ and Cl^- channels, the narrow region of the permeation pathway (selectivity filter) is short relative to the thickness of the membrane, facilitating rapid conduction. In K^+ channels, in addition, the four binding sites in single file cause repulsion between adjacent ions, also facilitating rapid conduction. In contrast, in carriers (such as LeuT) and pumps (such as the Ca^{2+} -ATPase) the ion-binding sites are located deep inside the protein, with no

unobstructed pathway to the adjacent aqueous solutions. This feature limits the speed of ion transport, but permits occlusion, i.e., the ion pathway is never simultaneously open to both sides of the membrane. These arguments are lucidly presented by Gouaux and MacKinnon.⁴²

2. *Functionally different transport proteins present in the same family.* The CIC proteins appear to be an intermediate class of ion transport proteins in between channels and carriers. Their structure is channel-like, with vestibules in series with a short selectivity filter with capacity to contain several ions. Functionally, some CIC proteins are indeed channels, whereas others are antiporters in which the Cl^- flux is coupled to flux of H^+ in the opposite direction.^{3,76} A somewhat similar situation holds for the case of ABC proteins, which in most instances are pumps (ATPases), but at least one member (CFTR) is an ion channel. There is no crystal structure of CFTR yet, but from the primary and secondary structures one would not predict that the protein is a channel. It has been recently proposed that both CFTR and CIC-O are Cl^- channels evolved from transporters.¹⁵

3. *A pump can be transformed into a channel.* The marine toxin palitoxin (PTX) is a ~ 3000 Da molecule that consists of a chain of over 100 carbons with a complex variety of organic side groups. The mechanism of the toxic effect of PTX is to convert the Na^+, K^+ -ATPase from a cation pump into a nonselective cation channel that dissipates the Na^+ and K^+ gradients between the cell and the extracellular fluid. This could be explained if the effect of PTX were to open the two gates necessary for the normal operation of the pump, thus revealing the ion translocation pathway. PTX was shown to interact with the pump in excised membrane patches, this interaction was dependent of the presence of ATP on the inside of the membrane, and was modulated by extracellular K^+ , indicating that the PTX-dependent channel function shares properties of the native pump.^{7,8} In other studies, the permeation pathway was mapped using the technique known as cysteine-scanning mutagenesis, in which the accessibility of amino acid sites to small hydrophilic thiol reagents is assessed after mutating those sites to Cys. Residues in transmembrane helices 4, 5, and 6 became accessible by exposure to PTX,^{43,44,57} consistent with the structural studies described above.

We have presented three arguments that support the notion that ion channels, carriers, and pumps share a basic molecular architecture (see³⁷ and³⁸). In sum, and as illustrated in Figure 2.14, the simplest ion

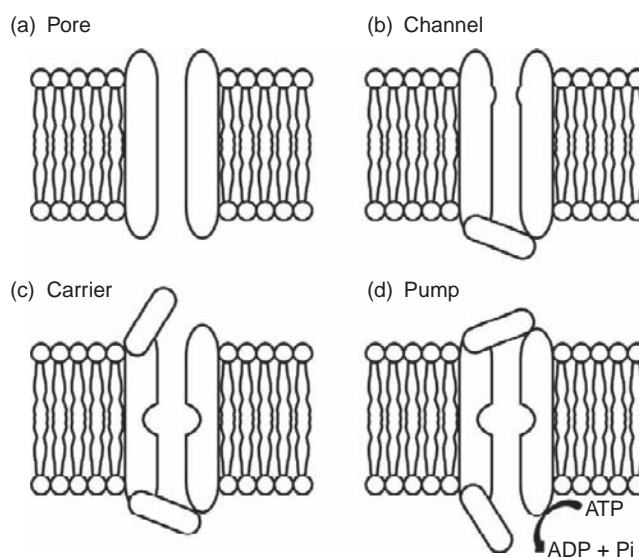


FIGURE 2.14 A simplified view of structure–function correlations in ion transport proteins. (a) Pore, the simplest ion transport protein, is a transmembrane aqueous conduit with no gates, accessible to both sides of the membrane at all times (always open). (b) Channel, a pore with a gate whose position determines whether the channel is open or closed. The open channel is accessible to both sides of the membrane. (c) Carrier, a transmembrane protein with two gates that are never open at the same time. Thus, the carrier interior may be accessible to only one side of the membrane; when both gates are closed the substrate is occluded (inaccessible to either side). (d) Pump, a carrier that is directly coupled to a metabolic energy source, e.g., hydrolysis of ATP.

transport protein would be a pore (no gate), followed by a pore with one gate (channel), a pore with two gates (carrier), and finally a pore with two gates coupled to a metabolic-energy source (pump). As more structures of membrane transport proteins become available the “missing links” might be identified.

References

- [1] Abramson J, Iwata S, Kaback HR. Lactose permease as a paradigm for membrane transport proteins. *Mol Membr Biol* 2004;21:227–36.
- [2] Abramson J, Smirnova I, Kasho V, Verner G, Kaback HR, Iwata S. Structure and mechanism of the lactose permease of *Escherichia coli*. *Science* 2003;301:610–5.
- [3] Accardi A, Miller C. Secondary active transport mediated by a prokaryotic homologue of CIC Cl^- channels. *Nature* 2004;427:803–7.
- [4] Aller P, Garnier N, Genest M. Transmembrane helix packing of ErbB/Neu receptor in membrane environment: a molecular dynamics study. *J Biomol Struct Dyn* 2006;24:209–28.
- [5] Apell HJ. How do P-type ATPases transport ions? *Bioelectrochemistry* 2004;63:149–56.
- [6] Arnold WN. *Yeast cell envelopes: biochemistry, biophysics, and ultrastructure*. Boca Raton, FL: CRC Press; 1981.
- [7] Artigas P, Gadsby DC. Na^+/K^+ pump ligands modulate gating of palytoxin-induced ion channels. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* 2003;100:501–5.

- [8] Artigas P, Gadsby DC. Large diameter of palytoxin-induced Na^+/K^+ pump channels and modulation of palytoxin interaction by Na^+K^+ pump ligands. *J Gen Physiol* 2004;123:357–76.
- [9] Behnia R, Munro S. Organelle identity and the signposts for membrane traffic. *Nature* 2005;438:597–604.
- [10] Brini M, Carafoli E. Calcium pumps in health and disease. *Physiol Rev* 2009;89:1341–78.
- [11] Calvet JP, Grantham JJ. The genetics and physiology of polycystic kidney disease. *Semin Nephrol* 2001;21:107–23.
- [12] Canessa CM, Horisberger JD, Rossier BC. Epithelial sodium channel related to proteins involved in neurodegeneration. *Nature* 1993;361:467–70.
- [13] Catterall WA. Structure and function of voltage-gated ion channels. In: Schultz SG, Andreoli TE, Brown AM, Fambrough DM, Hoffman JF, Welsh MJ, editors. *Molecular biology of membrane transport disorders*. New York: Plenum Press; 1996. p. 129–45.
- [14] Chen TY. Structure and function of CIC channels. *Annu Rev Physiol* 2005;67:809–39.
- [15] Chen TY, Hwang TC. CLC-0 and CFTR: chloride channels evolved from transporters. *Physiol Rev* 2008;88:351–87.
- [16] Crane RK. Intestinal absorption of sugars. *Physiol Rev* 1960;40:789–825.
- [17] Dang S, Sun L, Huang Y, Lu F, Liu Y, Gong H, et al. Structure of fucose transporter in an outward-open conformation. *Nature* 2010;467:734–8.
- [18] Dawson DC. Permeability and conductance in ion channels: a primer. In: Schultz SG, Andreoli TE, Brown AM, Fambrough DM, Hoffman JF, Welsh MJ, editors. *Molecular biology of membrane transport disorders*. New York: Plenum Press; 1996. p. 87–110.
- [19] Dawson RJ, Locher KP. Structure of a bacterial multidrug ABC transporter. *Nature* 2006;443:180–5.
- [20] Deisenhofer J, Epp O, Miki K, Huber R, Michel H. Structure of the protein subunits in the photosynthetic reaction centre of *Rhodospseudomonas viridis* at 3 Å resolution. *Nature* 1985;318:618–24.
- [21] Delcour AH. Solute uptake through general porins. *Front Biosci* 2003;8:d1055–71.
- [22] Devuyst O, Guggino WB. Chloride channels in the kidney: lessons learned from knockout animals. *Am J Physiol Renal Physiol* 2002;283:F1176–91.
- [23] Dietrich B. Coordination chemistry of alkali and alkaline-earth cations with macrocyclic ligands. *J Chem Educ* 1985;62:954–8.
- [24] Doyle DA. Molecular insights into ion channel function. *Mol Membr Biol* 2004;21:221–5.
- [25] Doyle DA. Structural changes during ion channel gating. *Trends Neurosci* 2004;27:298–302.
- [26] Doyle DA, Morais Cabral J, Pfuetzner RA, Kuo A, Gulbis JM, Cohen SL, et al. The structure of the potassium channel: molecular basis of K^+ conduction and selectivity. *Science* 1998;280:69–77.
- [27] Duran C, Thompson CH, Xiao Q, Hartzell HC. Chloride channels: often enigmatic, rarely predictable. *Annu Rev Physiol* 2010;72:95–121.
- [28] Dutzler R, Campbell EB, Cadene M, Chait BT, MacKinnon R. X-ray structure of a CIC chloride channel at 3.0 Å reveals the molecular basis of anion selectivity. *Nature* 2002;415:287–94.
- [29] Dutzler R, Campbell EB, MacKinnon R. Gating the selectivity filter in CIC chloride channels. *Science* 2003;300:108–12.
- [30] Engelman DM. Membranes are more mosaic than fluid. *Nature* 2005;438:578–80.
- [31] Facciotti MT, Rouhani-Manshadi S, Glaeser RM. Energy transduction in transmembrane ion pumps. *Trends Biochem Sci* 2004;29:445–51.
- [32] Faham S, Watanabe A, Besserer GM, Cascio D, Specht A, Hirayama BA, et al. The crystal structure of sodium galactose transporter reveals mechanistic insights into Na^+ /sugar symport. *Science* 2008;321:810–4.
- [33] Fambrough DM, Inesi G. Cation transport ATPases. In: Schultz SG, Andreoli TE, Brown AM, Fambrough DM, Hoffman JF, Welsh MJ, editors. *Molecular biology of membrane transport disorders*. New York: Plenum Press; 1996. p. 223–41.
- [34] Fick A. Ueber diffusion. *Ann Phys Chem* 1855;94:59–86.
- [35] Finbow ME, Harrison MA. The vacuolar H^+ -ATPase: a universal proton pump of eukaryotes. *Biochem J* 1997;324:697–712.
- [36] Finkelstein A, Rosenberg PA. Single-file transport: implications for ion and water movement through gramicidin channels. In: Stevens CF, Tsien RW, editors. *Membrane transport processes*. New York: Raven Press; 1979. p. 73–88.
- [37] Gadsby DC. Ion transport: spot the difference. *Nature* 2004;427:795–7.
- [38] Gadsby DC. Ion channels versus ion pumps: the principal difference, in principle. *Nat Rev Mol Cell Biol* 2009;10:344–52.
- [39] Galletta LJ. The TMEM16 protein family: a new class of chloride channels? *Biophys J* 2009;97:3047–53.
- [40] Glynn IM, Hoffman JF. Nucleotide requirements for sodium–sodium exchange catalysed by the sodium pump in human red cells. *J Physiol* 1971;218:239–56.
- [41] Goldman DE. Potential, impedance, and rectification in membranes. *J Gen Physiol* 1943;27:37–60.
- [42] Gouaux E, Mackinnon R. Principles of selective ion transport in channels and pumps. *Science* 2005;310:1461–5.
- [43] Guennoun S, Horisberger JD. Structure of the 5th transmembrane segment of the Na, K-ATPase a subunit: a cysteine-scanning mutagenesis study. *FEBS Lett* 2000;482:144–8.
- [44] Guennoun S, Horisberger JD. Cysteine scanning mutagenesis study of the 6th transmembrane segment of the Na, K-ATPase a subunit: a cysteine-scanning mutagenesis study. *FEBS Lett* 2002;513:277–88.
- [45] Hartzell HC, Yu K, Xiao Q, Chien LT, Qu Z. Anoctamin/TMEM16 family members are Ca^{2+} -activated Cl^- channels. *J Physiol* 2009;587:2127–39.
- [46] Hebert SC, Desir G, Giebisch G, Wang W. Molecular diversity and regulation of renal potassium channels. *Physiol Rev* 2005;85:319–71.
- [47] Hediger MA, Romero MF, Peng JB, Rolfs A, Takanao H, Bruford EA. The ABCs of solute carriers: physiological, pathological and therapeutic implications of human membrane transport proteins. *Pflügers Arch* 2004;447:465–8.
- [48] Heginbotham L, Lu Z, Abramson T, MacKinnon R. Mutations in the K^+ channel signature sequence. *Biophys J* 1994;66:1061–7.
- [49] Hilgemann DW, Feng S, Nasuhoglu C. The complex and intriguing lives of PIP_2 with ion channels and transporters. *Science-STKE* 2001;111:1–8.
- [50] Hille B. *Ionic channels of excitable membranes*. 3rd ed. Sunderland: Sinauer; 2001.
- [51] Hodgkin AL, Katz B. The effect of sodium ions on the electrical activity of the giant axon of the squid. *J Physiol (London)* 1949;108:37–77.
- [52] Hoenderop JG, Nilius B, Bindels RJ. Calcium absorption across epithelia. *Physiol Rev* 2005;85:373–422.
- [53] Hollenstein K, Dawson R, Locher K. Structure and mechanism of ABC transporter proteins. *Curr Opin Struct Biol* 2007;17:412–8.
- [54] Horisberger JD. *The Na, K-ATPase: structure-function relationship*. Boca Raton, FL: CRC Press; 1994. p. 1–20.
- [55] Horisberger JD. Recent insights into the structure and mechanism of the sodium pump. *Physiology (Bethesda)* 2004;19:377–87.
- [56] Horisberger JD, Chraïbi A. Epithelial sodium channel: a ligand-gated channel? *Nephron Physiol* 2004;96:37–41.